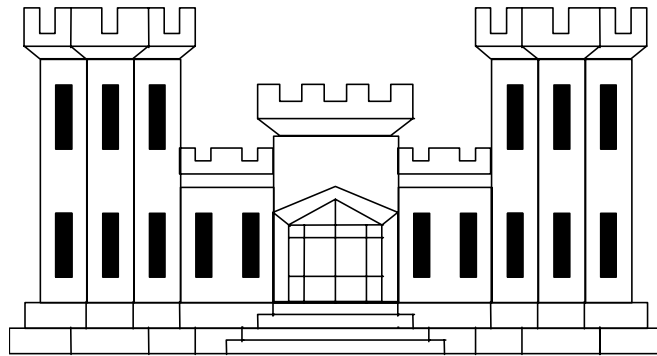


**HEADQUARTERS,
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY**

ARTEP 5-425-66-MTP



**MISSION TRAINING PLAN
FOR THE
ENGINEER BATTALION
CORPS (WHEEL)**

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited

MISSION TRAINING PLAN

Engineer Battalion (Corps) (Wheeled)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
Table of Contents	i
PREFACE	ii
Chapter 1. Unit Training	1-1
Chapter 2. Training Matrixes	2-1
2-1. General.....	2-1
2-2. Mission to Collective Tasks Matrix.....	2-1
Chapter 3. Mission Outlines/Training Plans	3-1
Chapter 4. Training Exercise	4-1
Chapter 5. Training and Evaluation Outlines	5-1
Chapter 6. External Evaluation	6-1
APPENDIX A - EXERCISE OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)	Appendix A-1
APPENDIX B - CONVERSION FACTORS (UNITED STATES [US] AND METRIC)	Appendix B-1
Glossary	Glossary-1
References	References-1
Questionnaire	Questionnaire-1

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

DESTRUCTION NOTICE:

*This publication, along with ARTEP-MTPs 5-025-66, 5-026-34, 5-027-10, 5-155-66, 5-156-34, 5-157-10, 5-157-35, 5-217-10, 5-217-35, 5-335-60, 5-335-65, 5-335-70, 5-426-34, 5-427-10, 5-445-66, 5-446-34, 5-446-36, 5-447-10, and 5-447-35, dated 2 October 2000, and ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP, dated 28 October 2000, supersedes ARTEP 5-025-MTP, dated 18 October 1989. This publication also supersedes ARTEP 5-145-MTP, dated 17 February 1989.

PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) provides the Active (AC) and Reserve Component (RC) training manager with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to train the unit to perform its critical wartime operations. While general defense plan missions and deployment assignments impact on the priorities, the operations described here are the principal ones that the Engineer Battalion, Corps (Wheeled), are expected to execute with a high level of proficiency. Each unit is expected to train, as a minimum, to the standards of the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in the MTP. Standards for training may be more difficult but may not be lowered. This document is in alignment with and is part of the United States (US) Army's training and tactical doctrine.

This MTP applies to the Engineer Battalion, Corps (Wheeled) table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE) 05425L000.

The proponent of this publication is Headquarters (HQ), United States (US) Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC). Send comments and recommendations on Department of Army (DA) Form 2028 directly to Commandant, Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Fort Leonard Wood, Missouri 65473-6600.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

CHAPTER 1

Unit Training

1-1. General. This mission training plan (MTP) provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit’s training program will depend on the following factors:

- a. Unit’s mission-essential task list (METL).
- b. Chain-of-command training directives and guidance.
- c. Training priorities of the unit.
- d. Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. Supporting Material. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program that is part of the next higher echelon’s training program. This relationship is illustrated in Figure 1-1. The unit’s training program consists of:

- a. Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) 5-425-66-MTP. This ARTEP MTP indicates the relationship of the battalion training program to the company training program.
- b. ARTEP 5-335-DRILL for the engineer drills. The unit must sustain drills. They are United States (US) Army standards and may not be modified.
- c. Soldier’s training publications (STPs) for the appropriate military occupational specialty (MOS) and skill levels.
- d. Military Qualification Standards (MQS)-II manual for company-grade officers.

Figure 1-1 shows the relationship of these supporting materials.

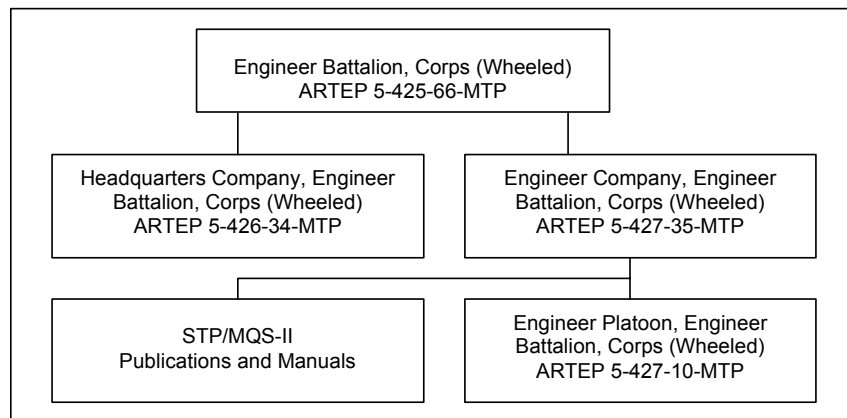


Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship

1-3. Contents. This MTP is organized into six chapters and three appendixes.

- a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. This chapter explains how to use this MTP in establishing an effective training program.
- b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes, shows the relationship between the missions-to-collective tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between the missions and their subordinate tasks.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises, consists of a field training exercise (FTX) and supporting situational training exercises (STXs). They provide training information and a preconstructed scenario. Also, they can serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. These exercises may be modified to suit the training needs of this unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, provides the training and evaluation criteria for all the tasks this unit must master to effectively perform its mission. Each task is a T&EO that identifies task steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and opposing forces (OPFOR) counter tasks. Each T&EO is part of a mission, and in various combinations, composes training exercises in Chapter 4.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation, provides instructions for planning, preparing, and executing an external evaluation.

g. Appendix A, Exercise Operation Order (OPORD), used in conjunction with the training exercise in Chapter 4.

h. Appendix B, Conversion Factors (United States [US] and Metric), shows how to convert metric and US measurements.

1-4. Missions and Tasks. This MTP concerns specific missions found in the table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE) and an implied mission that this unit must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical mission is the focal mission for this unit. The commander may supplement these missions with his own. The following is a listing of the missions for this unit:

- Mobility
- Countermobility
- Survivability
- Fight as an Engineer
- General Engineering

a. Tasks for this mission may be trained individually or jointly with other tasks. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EOs. Several T&EOs can be trained as an STX. Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop an FTX for the unit to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation that is designed by the next higher echelon to evaluate the unit's ability to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

b. Squad tasks are trained in much the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in the drill book.

c. Leader tasks that support the unit's missions are trained through STP training, battle simulations, and execution of this unit's missions.

d. Individual tasks that support unit tasks are mastered by training to standards in the appropriate STP.

1-5. Principles of Training. This MTP is based on the training principles found in Field Manual (FM) 25-100. For further information see Chapter 1 of this manual.

1-6. Training Strategy. The training program developed and executed by the engineer battalion to train to standards in its critical wartime missions will be a component of the Army's CATS. The purpose of the CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the Total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. CATS will provide the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to the CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the types of training events and resources required to train to standard. CATS will be embedded in the SATS Version 4.1 and higher.

a. The unit training strategies central to CATS will provide the commander with a descriptive "menu" for training reflecting that while there is an optimal way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. This unit's training strategy provides a means for training the battalion to standard by listing the required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects from this MTP those tasks required to train his METL. The training strategies to be provided in the SATS Version 4.1 will provide the means whereby those tasks that can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.

c. This unit's training strategy will be comprised of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in the MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard. The elements of the unit's training strategy are:

(1) Maneuver and collective training strategy. The maneuver strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depicts those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) Gunnery strategy. The gunnery strategy is based on weapons systems found in the unit. It provides an annual training plan and depicts resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from the Standards in Training Commission (STRAC) manual or the appropriate FM publications.

(3) Soldier strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

d. A vital element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl, walk, run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks contained in the STX must be trained to standard before conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of the soldiers, or unit(s), to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates is made recognizing that the unit's METL and the commander's assessment of his unit's training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective training exercises in a specific unit's training strategy.

e. When developing the unit's training plan, the commander identifies from the MTP the training tasks required to train his METL. CATS is discussed in Appendix A of this MTP.

1-7. Conducting Training. This MTP is designed to facilitate planning, preparing, and conducting unit training as explained in FMs 25-100 and 25-101. The commander--

a. Assigns the missions and supporting tasks for which he intends to develop training based on his METL and the guidance from the next higher headquarters (HQ). Trainers must plan and execute unit training to support this guidance.

b. Reviews the mission outlines in Chapter 3 to determine whether the STXs and FTXs provided will support, or can be modified to support, command guidance. If they do not support the guidance, or if they need to be modified, refer to the matrixes in Chapter 2. These matrixes provide a list of all critical collective tasks, drills, and individual tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

c. Prioritizes the tasks that need training. There will never be time to train everything. You must focus on the greatest challenges and most difficult sustainment skills.

d. Integrates training tasks into the training schedule. Use the following procedures to do this:

(1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency that they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the amount of time required and how you can use multiechelon training for the best effect.

(3) Determine where the training can take place.

(4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.

(5) Organize your needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. Approves the list of tasks to be trained. Once the list is approved, he schedules them on the unit's training schedule.

f. Determines the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. Informs the subordinate leaders of training requirements and oversees their training. Ensures that the standards are rigidly enforced.

1-8. Force Protection (Safety).

a. Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders, and soldiers use risk assessment and management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns the responsibility, institutionalizes the commander's review of operational safety, and leads to decision making at a level of command appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help unit's protect combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win fast and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations. Safety begins with readiness that determines a unit's ability to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are--

(1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.

(2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.

(3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.

(4) Standards and procedures for task preference that are clear and practical.

(5) Support for task preference, including equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

b. Risk management is a tool that addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It assists commanders and leaders in not only identifying what the next accident is going to be, but also helps identify who will have the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in death, injuries, or damaged equipment.

c. Safety demands total chain-of-command involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. The chain-of-command's responsibilities include--

- (1) Commanders.
 - (a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.
 - (b) Specify the risk they will accept to accomplish the mission.
 - (c) Select risk reductions provided by the staff.
 - (d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.
 - (e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management concepts.
- (2) Staff.
 - (a) Assists the commander in assessing risks and develops risk-reduction options for training.
 - (b) Integrates risk control in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance measures.
 - (c) Eliminates unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.
 - (d) Assesses safety performance during training.
 - (e) Evaluates safety performance during after-action review(s) (AARs).
- (3) Subordinate leaders.
 - (a) Apply consistently effective risk-management concepts and methods to operations they lead.
 - (b) Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.
- (4) Individual soldiers.
 - (a) Report unsafe conditions and acts and corrects the situation when possible.
 - (b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.
 - (c) Take responsibility for personal safety
 - (d) Work as a team member.
 - (e) Modify own risk behavior.

d. Risk management is a five-step cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 101-5. The five steps are--

- (1) Identify hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the mission.
- (2) Analyze hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of it causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army Standard Risk Assessment Matrix, Figure 1-2, is a tool for assessing hazards.

(3) Make risk decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operations. Accept no unnecessary risks and make risk decisions at the proper level of command.

(4) Implement controls. Integrate specific controls into operation plans (OPLANS), OPORDs, standing operating procedures (SOPs), and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.

(5) Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards, to include a follow up and an AAR. Develop the lessons learned.

		HAZARD PROBABILITY				
		FREQUENT	PROBABLE	OCCASIONAL	REMOTE	IMPROBABLE
		A	B	C	D	E
EFFECT	E CATASTROPHIC	I	EXTREMELY HIGH	HIGH		LOW
	F CRITICAL	II		HIGH		LOW
	E MARGINAL	III	MEDIUM		LOW	
	T NEGLIGIBLE	IV	LOW			
<u>Effect</u>						
Catastrophic	Death or permanent total disability, system loss, and major property damage.					
Critical	Permanent partial disability, temporary total disability in excess of 3 months, major system damage, significant property damage.					
Marginal	Minor injury, lost workday accident, compensable injury or illness, minor system/property damage.					
Negligible	First aid or minor supportive medical treatment, minor system impairment.					
<u>Probability</u>						
Frequent	Individual soldier/item.		Occurs often in career/equipment or both service life.			
	All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Continuously experienced.			
Probable	Individual soldier/item		Occurs several times in career/equipment service life.			
	All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Occurs frequently.			
Occasional	Individual soldier/item.		Occurs sometime in career/equipment service life.			
	All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Occurs sporadically or several times in inventory service life.			
Remote	Individual soldier/item		Possible to occur in career/equipment service life.			
	All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Remote chance of occurrence; expected to occur sometime in inventory service life.			
Improbable	Individual soldier/item		Can assume will not occur in career/equipment service life.			
	All soldiers exposed or item inventory		Possible, but not probable; occurs only very rarely.			
<u>Risk Levels</u>						
Extremely High	Loss of ability to accomplish mission.					
High	Significantly degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission standards.					
Medium	Degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission.					
Low	Little or no impact on mission accomplishment.					

Figure 1-2. Risk-Assessment Matrix

e. **Fratricide.** It is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is the employment of weapons with the intent to kill the enemy and/or destroy enemy equipment, which results in the unforeseen and unintentional death, injury, or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide is by definition an accident. Risk assessment and management are the mechanisms with which incidence of fratricide can be controlled.

f. The primary causes of fratricide are--

(1) **Direct-fire control-plan failures.** These occur when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire-control plans.

(2) **Land-navigation failures.** These occur when units stray out of sector, report wrong locations, and become disoriented.

(3) **Combat-identification failures.** These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited-visibility conditions.

(4) **Inadequate control measures.** Units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire-support control measures necessary to tie the control measures to recognizable terrain or events.

(5) **Reporting failures.** Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(6) **Weapons errors.** Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives or hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(7) **Battlefield hazards.** Unexploded ordnance (UXO), unmarked or unrecorded minefields, scatterable mines (SCATMINES), and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, record, remove, or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

g. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the unit's ability to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe these consequences:

(1) Loss of confidence in the unit's leadership.

(2) Increase of self-doubt among leaders.

(3) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.

(4) Oversupervision of units.

(5) Hesitation to conduct night operations.

(6) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.

(7) Loss of initiative.

(8) Disrupted operations.

(9) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. **Environmental Protection.** Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever-increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease and, if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management

parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

a. Identify hazards. Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during analysis of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. This requires identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural and/or historical artifacts.

b. Assess the hazard. Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation using the environmental risk-assessment matrixes (Figure 1-3). The severity of environmental degradation is considered when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Using the environmental risk-assessment matrixes, quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, medium, or low.

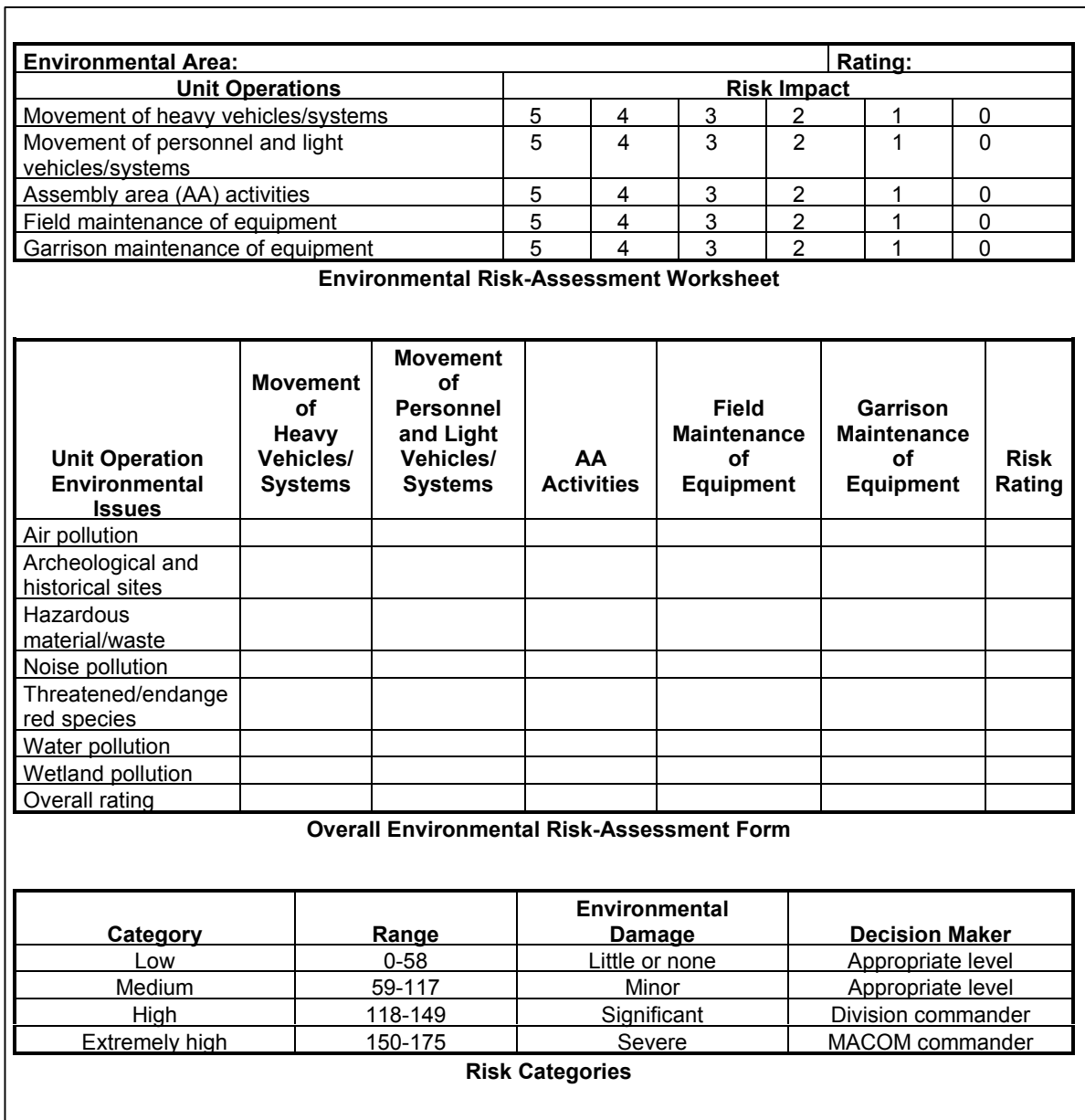


Figure 1-3. Environmental Risk-Assessment Matrix

c. Make environmental risk decisions. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

d. Brief the chain of command. Brief the chain of command (to include the installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

e. Implement controls. Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training-performance standards, and rehearsals.

f. Supervise. Supervise and enforce environmental protection standards.

1-10. Evaluation. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe standards that must be met for each task.

a. Evaluations can be internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels and are inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are normally conducted by a HQ two levels above the evaluated unit. (See Chapter 6, External Evaluation.)

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Often, soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard, then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small-group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is not always feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but should not be totally eliminated. Plan AARs at frequent logical intervals during the exercises (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique that will allow you to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR and detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

1-11. Feedback. Recommendations for improvement of this MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. There is a questionnaire at the end of this MTP to make it easier to send recommendations and comments.

CHAPTER 2

Training Matrixes

2-1. General. The training Matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit's personnel.

2-2. Mission to Collective Tasks Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-2), identifies the missions and their supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate BOS which are indicated by an **X** in the matrix. The BOS used in this matrix are defined in TRADOC Pam 11-9. A specific mission is trained by identifying collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

The mission identification table listed below (Figure 2-1) provides mission identification for the unit.

Mission Identification Table	
Mission Title	
• COUNTERMOBILITY	
• FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	
• FIGHT AS INFANTRY	
• GENERAL ENGINEERING	
• MOBILITY	
• PERFORM SURVIVABILITY CONSTRUCTION	

Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table

Collective Tasks		COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	GENERAL ENGINEERING
Develop Intelligence					
05-1-0027	PERFORM ENGINEER BATTLEFIELD ASSESSMENT	X			X
05-1-0412	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection	X	X	X	X
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment	X	X	X	X
34-1-2005.05-T01A	Disseminate Combat Information and Intelligence (BN)	X	X	X	X
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X	X	X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
05-1-1200	Fight as Engineers	X	X	X	X
05-2-0908.05-R01A	Conduct Quartering-Party Operations	X	X	X	X
05-2-1200	Reorganize as Infantry	X	X	X	X
05-2-1215	Fight as Infantry	X	X	X	X
05-3-1232	Secure at a Halt	X	X	X	X
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire	X	X	X	X
07-2-0333.05-T01A	Perform Passage of Lines	X	X	X	X
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks	COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	GENERAL ENGINEERING
07-2-1301.05-T01A Conduct a Convoy	X	X	X	X
07-3-0219.05-T01A Establish Unit Defense	X	X	X	X
07-3-1123.05-T01A Conduct a Tactical Road March	X	X	X	X
07-3-C211.05-T01A Move Tactically	X	X	X	X
12-1-0409.05-T01A Prepare Personnel for Deployment	X	X	X	X
Protect the Force				
03-2-3008.05-T01A Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	X	X	X	X
03-2-C312.05-T01A Conduct a Thorough Decontamination Operation	X	X	X	X
03-3-C201.05-T01A Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, Chemical (NBC) Conditions	X	X	X	X
03-3-C202.05-T01A Prepare for a Chemical Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C203.05-T01A Respond to a Chemical Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C205.05-T01A Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike	X	X	X	X
03-3-C206.05-T01A Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	X	X	X	X
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations	X	X	X	X
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination	X	X	X	X
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	X	X	X	X
05-1-0001 PREPARE AN OBSTACLE PLAN (BATTALION)	X			X
05-1-0600 Support a River-Crossing Operation	X	X	X	X
05-1-0906 Plan/Supervise Air-Assault Operations	X			
05-1-1026 Conduct Deployment Operations	X	X		X

Collective Tasks		COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	GENERAL ENGINEERING
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X	X	X	X
05-2-0911	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack	X	X	X	X
05-3-0113	Conduct Self-Extraction from Remotely-Delivered Mines	X	X	X	X
05-3-0210	Disable Critical Equipment and Material	X	X	X	X
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security	X	X	X	X
05-5-0302	Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions	X	X	X	X
09-2-0337.05-T01A	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)	X	X	X	X
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air-Defense Measures	X	X	X	X
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined-Arms Air-Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms	X	X	X	X
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk-Management Procedures	X	X	X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
05-1-0050	Coordinate for Medical Services	X	X	X	X
05-1-1000	Conduct Logistics Operations	X	X	X	X
05-2-0051	Coordinate for Food-Service Support	X	X	X	X
05-2-1024	Conduct Combat Refueling Operations	X	X	X	X
05-3-1054	Plan/Direct Aerial Logistics Operations	X	X	X	X
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress-Reduction and Stress-Prevention Procedures	X	X	X	X
08-2-R315.05-T01A	Perform Field-Sanitation Functions	X	X	X	X
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply	X	X	X	X
11-5-0081.05-T01A	Install and Operate a Radio Teletypewriter (RATT) Set	X	X	X	X
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System	X	X	X	X
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties	X	X	X	X
12-1-0404.05-T01A	Perform Strength Accounting	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks	COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	GENERAL ENGINEERING
12-1-0405.05-T01A Conduct Replacement Operations	X	X	X	X
12-1-0406.05-T01A Process Personnel and Administrative Actions	X	X	X	X
12-1-0410.05-T01A Provide Legal Support	X	X	X	X
19-3-3106.05-T01A Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)	X	X	X	X
43-2-0001.05-T01A Conduct Unit-Level Maintenance Operations	X	X	X	X
Exercise Command and Control				
05-1-0002 Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion)	X			X
05-1-0003 Prepare an Engineer Annex Battalion	X			X
05-1-0026 Report Engineer Information	X	X	X	X
05-1-0029 DEVELOP AND IMPLEMENT AN AREA-DAMAGE-CONTROL (ADC) PLAN	X	X	X	X
05-1-0031 Control Area-Damage-Control Operations	X	X		X
05-1-0035 Control a Base in a Base Cluster	X	X		X
05-1-0045 Control Airfield Damage Repair Operations	X	X		X
05-1-0721 Plan/Control Augmentation Support	X	X	X	X
05-3-1018.05-R01A Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	X	X	X	X
11-3-0214.05-T01A Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X	X	X	X
11-5-1102.05-T01A Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	X	X	X	X
12-1-0408.05-T01A Participate in the Operations Order Process	X	X	X	X
12-2-0338.05-T01A Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability	X	X	X	X
12-3-0001.05-T01A Maintain Platoon Strength	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks		MOBILITY	SURVIVABILITY
Develop Intelligence			
05-1-0027	PERFORM ENGINEER BATTLEFIELD ASSESSMENT	X	X
05-1-0412	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection	X	X
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment	X	X
34-1-2005.05-T01A	Disseminate Combat Information and Intelligence (BN)	X	X
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver			
05-1-1200	Fight as Engineers	X	X
05-2-0908.05-R01A	Conduct Quartering-Party Operations	X	X
05-2-1200	Reorganize as Infantry	X	X
05-2-1215	Fight as Infantry	X	X
05-3-1232	Secure at a Halt	X	X
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire	X	X
07-2-0333.05-T01A	Perform Passage of Lines	X	X
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	X	X
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy	X	X
07-3-0219.05-T01A	Establish Unit Defense	X	X
07-3-1123.05-T01A	Conduct a Tactical Road March	X	X
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically	X	X
12-1-0409.05-T01A	Prepare Personnel for Deployment	X	X
Protect the Force			
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	X	X
03-2-C312.05-T01A	Conduct a Thorough Decontamination Operation	X	X
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, Chemical (NBC) Conditions	X	X
03-3-C202.05-T01A	Prepare for a Chemical Attack	X	X
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack	X	X

Collective Tasks	MOBILITY	SURVIVABILITY
03-3-C205.05-T01A Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike	X	X
03-3-C206.05-T01A Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	X	X
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	X	X
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations	X	X
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X	X
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X	X
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination	X	X
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	X	X
05-1-0001 PREPARE AN OBSTACLE PLAN (BATTALION)	X	
05-1-0600 Support a River-Crossing Operation	X	X
05-1-0906 Plan/Supervise Air-Assault Operations	X	
05-1-1026 Conduct Deployment Operations	X	X
05-2-0301 Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X	X
05-2-0911 Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack	X	X
05-3-0113 Conduct Self-Extraction from Remotely-Delivered Mines	X	X
05-3-0210 Disable Critical Equipment and Material	X	X
05-3-0904.05-R01A Establish Jobsite Security	X	X
05-5-0302 Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions	X	X
09-2-0337.05-T01A React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)	X	X
44-1-C220.05-T01A Use Passive Air-Defense Measures	X	X
44-1-C221.05-T01A Take Active Combined-Arms Air-Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms	X	X
71-2-0326.05-T01A Perform Risk-Management Procedures	X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment		

Collective Tasks		MOBILITY	SURVIVABILITY
05-1-0050	Coordinate for Medical Services	X	X
05-1-1000	Conduct Logistics Operations	X	X
05-2-0051	Coordinate for Food-Service Support	X	X
05-2-1024	Conduct Combat Refueling Operations	X	X
05-3-1054	Plan/Direct Aerial Logistics Operations	X	X
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress-Reduction and Stress-Prevention Procedures	X	X
08-2-R315.05-T01A	Perform Field-Sanitation Functions	X	X
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply	X	X
11-5-0081.05-T01A	Install and Operate a Radio Teletypewriter (RATT) Set	X	X
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System	X	X
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties	X	X
12-1-0404.05-T01A	Perform Strength Accounting	X	X
12-1-0405.05-T01A	Conduct Replacement Operations	X	X
12-1-0406.05-T01A	Process Personnel and Administrative Actions	X	X
12-1-0410.05-T01A	Provide Legal Support	X	X
19-3-3106.05-T01A	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)	X	X
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit-Level Maintenance Operations	X	X
Exercise Command and Control			
05-1-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion)	X	X
05-1-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex Battalion	X	X
05-1-0026	Report Engineer Information	X	X
05-1-0029	DEVELOP AND IMPLEMENT AN AREA-DAMAGE-CONTROL (ADC) PLAN	X	X
05-1-0031	Control Area-Damage-Control Operations	X	X
05-1-0035	Control a Base in a Base Cluster	X	X
05-1-0045	Control Airfield Damage Repair Operations	X	X

Collective Tasks	MOBILITY	SURVIVABILITY
05-1-0721 Plan/Control Augmentation Support	X	X
05-3-1018.05-R01A Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	X	X
11-3-0214.05-T01A Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X	X
11-5-1102.05-T01A Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	X	X
12-1-0408.05-T01A Participate in the Operations Order Process	X	X
12-2-0338.05-T01A Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability	X	X
12-3-0001.05-T01A Maintain Platoon Strength	X	X

Figure 2-2. Collective Task to Missions

CHAPTER 3

Mission Outlines/Training Plans

3-1. General. This chapter provides a mission outline and describes the use of the mission training plan (MTP) for developing battalion training plans. It is designed to assist commanders in preparing training plans for wartime missions. Field Manuals (FMs) 25-100 and 25-101 provide detailed information on training management. They should be used with the MTP to develop battalion training plans.

3-2. Long-Range Planning. Long-range planning allows commanders to provide timely input to the Army's various training resource systems and to provide a general direction for the training programs. The long-range plan consists of a calendar covering the planning period and the commander's formal guidance. To develop a long-range plan, the commander must first develop the unit's mission-essential task list (METL) and conduct a training assessment. These two actions are the two principal inputs at the beginning of the planning process. FM 25-100 and other FM 25-series manuals provide guidance on developing a unit's METL.

a. Develop the unit METL. An analysis of all specified and implied missions and other guidance is the first step in developing a METL. The next step is restating the unit's wartime mission. After analyzing the unit's missions and external directives, identify a list of tasks that must be accomplished if the unit is to accomplish its wartime mission successfully. Subordinate commanders and key noncommissioned officers (NCOs) participate in selecting the tasks. Develop a task list using the missions contained in Chapter 2 of this MTP, the missions assigned to the battalion by contingency plans, and the missions directed by higher headquarters (HQ) guidance. The commander reviews the task list and selects tasks that are essential to the unit's wartime mission. Selected tasks are forwarded to the next higher HQ for approval. The tasks selected are the unit's METL. Refer to Figure 3-1.

- | |
|--|
| <p>(1) DEVELOP INTELLIGENCE</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection 2. Disseminate Intelligence Information <p>(2) DEPLOY/CONDUCT MANEUVER</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Conduct a Tactical Movement 2. Occupy an Assembly Area 3. Defend the Convoy Against Ground Attack 4. Reorganize as Infantry <p>(3) EMPLOY FIREPOWER</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Coordinate the Integration of Air Defense for Mobility and Countermobility Operations 2. Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support <p>(4) PROTECT THE FORCE</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Prepare an Obstacle Plan 2. Plan Survivability Operations 3. Direct Survivability Operations 4. Control Hasty Gap Crossing <p>(5) PERFORM COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT (CSS) AND SUSTAINMENT</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Conduct Administration Operations (Battalion) 2. Treat Casualties 3. Perform Field-Sanitation Measures 4. Evacuate Casualties 5. Provide Food-Service Support 6. Provide Unit-Supply Support 7. Provide Legal Support <p>(6) EXERCISE COMMAND AND CONTROL (C2)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Prepare an Engineer Estimate 2. Prepare an Engineer Annex 3. Prepare an Operation Order 4. Control Combat Operations |
|--|

- | |
|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 5. Report Obstacle Information 6. Manage Battlefield Stress 7. Operate a Net-Control Station 8. Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures |
|---|

Figure 3-1. Sample Battalion METL

b. Establish the training objectives. After the METL is identified, the commander establishes the training objectives. The training objectives are the conditions and standards that describe the situation or the environment and the ultimate outcome criteria the unit must meet to perform the tasks successfully. Training objectives and standards for the METL can be obtained from this MTP, the soldier’s training plan (STP), higher HQ command guidance, and the local standing operating procedure (SOP).

c. Conduct the training assessment. The training assessment is the commander’s continuous comparison of the unit’s current proficiency with the proficiency required to fight and win on the battlefield. The commander, his staff, and the subordinate commanders assess the organization’s current proficiency on mission-essential tasks against the required standard. The commander then indicates the current proficiency by rating each task as “T” (trained), “P” (needs practice), “U” (untrained), or “?” (unknown). The outcome of the training assessment identifies the unit’s training requirements. Refer to Figure 3-2.

	Training Strategy						
	Develop Intelligence	Deploy/Conduct Maneuver	Employ Firepower	Protect the Force	Perform CSS and Sustainment	Exercise Command and Control	Overall
Mission-Essential Tasks							
Occupy Assembly Area	P	T	P	P	T	U	P
Control Hasty Gap Crossing	P	T	T	T	?	P	T
Conduct Logistic Operations	T	P	T	T	U	T	T
Report Casualties	U	?	P	P	T	T	U

Figure 3-2. Sample Commander’s Training Assessment

d. Develop the training strategy and the commander’s guidance. The training strategy is developed from the outcome of the training assessment. With the training strategy, the commander and his staff establish training priorities by determining the minimum frequency each mission-essential task will be trained during the upcoming planning period. It includes the commander’s guidance and his training vision. To develop unit goals, the commander must--

- (1) Review the higher commander’s goals.
- (2) Spell out in real-world terms what his unit will do to comply with the goals of the higher commanders.
- (3) List in broad terms his own goals for the unit. Figure 3-3 provides an example of battalion goals.

- Attain and sustain proficiency in all the MTP missions.
- Maintain a 90 percent operational-readiness (OR) rate.
- Attain and sustain a 100 percent crew gunnery qualification.

Figure 3-3. Sample Battalion Goals

e. Establish training priorities. Priorities are established for training METL tasks by basing the priorities on the training status, task criticality, and the relative training emphasis the task should receive. Figure 3-4 provides a sample training-priority list.

Task	Source	Training Priority
Control Combined-Arms Breaching	MTP	4
Control Combat Operations	MTP	2
Disseminate Intelligence Information	MTP	3
Prepare an Engineer Estimate	MTP	5
Command and Control	MTP	1

Figure 3-4. Sample Battalion Training-Priority List

f. Prepare a long-range planning calendar. The long-range planning calendar is the coordinating tool for long-range planning. It is structured by long-range training events to identify the time periods available for training mission-essential tasks. The long-range planning calendar projects the units training events and activities for the upcoming 12 to 18 months. To prepare a long-range calendar, follow the steps outlined below:

- (1) Select the training events and activities to train the mission. At battalion-level, the commander must project the events that will enable him to achieve his goals.
- (2) Assign a time for subordinate units to train. Subordinate leaders must be allowed to develop their training programs in support of the battalion training program.
- (3) Examine various alternatives to make optimum use of the support available to train the unit. Available training resources must be compared against higher HQ-directed training, battalion-directed training events, and subordinate-level projected training events. Resourcing tools available to the battalion commander are the battalion-level training model (BLTM), operating tempo (OPTEMPO), and Standards in Training Commission (STRAC).
- (4) Obtain approval of long-range plans from higher HQ.
- (5) Issue guidance. Training guidance is issued to the staff and subordinate units with the long-range training calendar. This training guidance supplements the long-range training calendar and generally includes the--
 - (a) Training policies.
 - (b) Types of mandatory training.
 - (c) Training resource guidance.

(d) Quotas for centralized training (schools).

(e) Training goals.

3-3. Short-Range Planning. A short-range plan is prepared to address the immediate future (3 months). Short-range planning develops specific training objectives based on the goals and guidance prepared during long-range planning. The short-range plan adds more detail and may modify the long-range plan based on current assessments. Prepare the short-range plan as described below:

a. Review the training program, the current unit proficiency, resources, and the training environment.

(1) Review the training program described in the long-range planning process. This review determines if the assessments made during long-range planning are still valid.

(2) Review previous short-range planning calendars for training accomplished, training preempted, and lessons learned.

(3) Review the current unit proficiency to update priorities.

(4) Review resources to determine if it is still possible to execute the program described on the long-range planning calendar.

(5) Review the training environment again in this phase of planning because it takes on added importance as training events and activities approach. Factors that affect the training environment and collectively impact the training programs are--

(a) Personnel assigned.

(b) Personnel turbulence.

(c) Morale.

(d) Education programs.

(e) Mandatory training.

(f) Visits, inspections, and tests.

(g) Supplies and equipment.

(h) Nonmission-related activities.

(i) Other programs.

b. Develop a detailed plan of action for short-range plans. Prepare the detailed plan of action as described below:

(1) Examine the events that are scheduled on the long-range training plan to determine if they are still valid.

(2) Transfer valid events to a short-range planning calendar.

(3) Determine the desired outcomes for the scheduled events.

(4) Analyze the missions to determine the related individual, leader, and collective tasks.

(5) Determine if there are any weaknesses. Select tasks to correct these weaknesses and to sustain selected individual, leader, and unit strengths (as necessary).

(6) Select the specific training objective for the mission and the tasks to be trained. The training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in Chapter 5 provide the commander with the training objectives.

(7) Prepare a short-range planning calendar or 3 monthly schedules. The short-range-training planning calendar provides a detailed plan of action for the specified period.

(8) Review short-range plans with higher HQ.

(9) Issue guidance. This guidance specifically addresses how training will be accomplished.

3-4. Near-Term Planning. The final phase of planning is the execution of training. Use the short-range plan to prepare weekly training schedules.

a. Review the unit's training program, proficiency, resources, and training environment. As in long- and short-range planning, this review determines if previous assessments are still valid.

b. Finalize the plans based on the review of the training program. Determine the best sequence for training tasks, and complete the final coordination of the training events and activities.

c. Prepare trainers, observers/controllers (Os/Cs), opposing forces (OPFOR), and support personnel to know what is being trained, why it is being trained, and what their role in the training will be.

3-5. Training the Headquarters and Headquarters Company (HHC). Planning training for the HHC provides the commander with unique challenges. The most severe challenges are those that deal with time and availability of personnel. The staff and HQ sections are involved in day-to-day operations and the support of subordinate unit training. It is difficult to find the time to address the training needs of these elements adequately. These elements must be capable of fulfilling their roles in order for the battalion to perform its wartime missions. The strategy selected by the commander for training these elements must include an effective method of training individuals, staffs, leaders, and units.

a. Training the battalion (staff training).

(1) Training the staff presents the greatest challenge within a constrained training environment. This MTP identifies the staff's training objectives. The staff has numerous tasks to master to be effective. Examples of tasks that any staff must be able to perform include--

(a) Analyzing the terrain.

(b) Functioning as an effective team.

(c) Exchanging information.

(d) Preparing estimates.

(e) Giving appraisals.

(f) Making recommendations and decisions.

(g) Preparing plans.

(h) Issuing orders.

- (i) Coordinating and controlling unit operations.
- (j) Supervising subordinate units.

(2) The strategy used to train the staff will vary based on the considerations used to plan training (such as the level of proficiency and the training support available). FM 25-101 contains detailed information for conducting the exercises. Some methods of staff training include the following exercises:

(a) Tactical exercise without troops (TEWT). TEWTs are low-cost, low-overhead exercises conducted in the field on actual terrain suitable for training units for specific missions. TEWTs are used by commanders to train subordinate leaders and staffs to analyze terrain and to conduct unit missions.

(b) Map exercise (MAPEX). MAPEXs are low-cost, low-overhead training exercises that allow commanders to train their staffs to perform essential integrating and control functions to support their decision under wartime conditions. MAPEXs may be used to train the staff to exchange information, prepare estimates, give appraisals, make recommendations and decisions, prepare plans, and issue orders.

(c) Command-post exercise (CPX). CPXs are medium-cost, medium-overhead training exercises that may be conducted in garrison or a field location. CPXs normally use a battle simulation to drive the staff actions.

(d) Field-training exercise (FTX). FTXs are high-cost, high-overhead exercises conducted in the field under simulated combat conditions. Unit-conducted FTXs drill the staff in coordination, control, and supervision of unit operations. Normally, the staff completes the staff planning tasks before the exercise begins. Brigade-conducted FTXs provide the best opportunity for the staff to combine all of its skills and perform as they would in wartime, responding to both higher and lower levels.

(3) At battalion level, a method to optimize staff and unit training is to integrate TEWTs; MAPEXs; CPXs; command field exercises (CFXs); and combined-arms, live-fire exercises (CALFEXs) to prepare the orders and plans for upcoming battalion FTXs. This exercises the entire spectrum of the staff effectively and makes optimum use of unit field training time. Each unit is different and only the commander can determine the best method of training his staff.

b. Training the battalion. Training the battalion is a complex task requiring both unit and staff training programs. Normal day-to-day operations place a unique burden on the battalion commander to accomplish training. Elements cross staff lines and responsibilities. The battalion executive officer (XO) coordinates with the battalion commander to ensure that the soldiers are mastering the individual tasks.

3-6. Developing Training Exercises. Chapter 4 provides a sample exercise for the battalion to use or modify to meet specific training needs. Since only a sample FTX is contained in the MTP, it is necessary for the battalion to develop exercises for its own use. This section provides general procedures for the battalion staff to use for FTX preparation and for the battalion supporting situational training exercises (STXs). Exercise plans are normally prepared during preparation of the short-range plan. Prepare the exercises as described below:

a. Mission and task selection for training. This was accomplished during the development of the long-range plan and refined during the development of the short-range plan.

b. Site selection. Confirm the selection of a training area.

c. Scenario development. After the missions and the tasks are selected, prepare a detailed scenario for the exercise.

- (1) List the mission, tasks, and events in the preferred sequence of occurrence.

(2) Identify events necessary for the control of the exercises. These events would normally include the issuance of orders, after-action reviews (AARs), and any other administrative or logistical action necessary to conduct the exercise.

(3) Prepare the exercise overlays that show the sequence of actions and the terrain to be used for each event.

(4) Determine the established time for each event using the overlay and scenario. The total time is determined to ensure that the scenario can be completed in the time allocated for the exercise.

d. Os/Cs and OPFOR selection. Os/Cs and OPFOR are normally required for every FTX and STX when the Multiple Integrated Laser-Engagement System (MILES) is used. It is difficult for a battalion to provide Os/Cs and OPFOR from its own resources. When Os/Cs and OPFOR must be provided from within the battalion, unit leaders may have to serve as the Os/Cs for their units and the OPFOR may be selected from personnel or units not essential for attaining the exercise objectives. Ideally, the higher HQ should provide Os/Cs and OPFOR.

e. Control-plan preparation. Develop control plans to coordinate the actions of the training units, OPFOR, and Os/Cs. The scenario is used and a detailed control plan is prepared. The control plan consists of--

(1) Detailed schedules of OPFOR actions.

(2) Detailed instructions for the OPFOR.

(3) Detailed schedules of activities for units.

(4) OPFORs and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) for friendly units. Normally, friendly-unit actions are controlled through the issuance of operation orders (OPORDs) and FRAGOs.

f. Evaluation-plan preparation. All training is evaluated, either internally or externally. The evaluation plan identifies the tasks to be evaluated, the evaluator, and the evaluation time. The evaluation will consist of--

(1) Specific instructions for the Os/Cs.

(2) A sequential list of T&EOs to be evaluated by each O/C.

(3) Detailed time schedules for the evaluation and the AARs.

3-7. Mission Outline. The mission outline is designed to provide a graphic portrayal of the relationship of the critical wartime mission to FTXs and STXs. This outline should assist the commander and his staff in the preparation of the training plans. Figure 3-5 is a sample mission outline for the battalion.

MISSION OUTLINE FOR ENGINEER BATTALION HEAVY DIVISION	
FTX CONDUCT MOBILITY OPERATIONS 5-1-E0001	
Task Number	Task Title
3-2-C0310	Conduct a Chemical Survey
5-1-70402	Integrate Engineer Reconnaissance into the

5-1-70001	Brigade Reconnaissance and Surveillance Plan
5-1-70008	Prepare an Obstacle Plan
5-1-70413	Prepare an Operations Order
5-1-70002	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
5-1-70004	Prepare an Engineer Estimate
5-1-71035	Occupy Assembly Area
	Integrate Engineer Elements into the Fire-Support Plan
5-1-70500	Control Hasty Gap Crossing
5-1-70520	Plan Breaching Operations
5-2-71000	Conduct Logistic Operations
5-4-70401	Conduct a Route Reconnaissance

Figure 3-5. Sample Engineer Battalion Mission Outline

CHAPTER 4

Training Exercise

4-1. General. Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This mission training plan (MTP) contains a sample field training exercise (FTX). It is designed to assist in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit's mission proficiency. Table 4-1 lists the FTX by exercise number, title, and page number.

Table 4-1. FTX exercise

Exercise Number	Exercise Title	Page
FTX 5-1-E0001	Conduct Mobility Operations	4-1

4-2. FTX. The FTX is designed to provide a training method for the unit to train critical wartime missions. It provides a logical sequence for the performance of the tasks previously trained in the situational training exercises (STXs).

4-3. STX. STXs are short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented, tactical exercises used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. The STX provides the information for training the missions that make up the critical wartime mission. The STX--

- a. Provides repetitive training of missions.
- b. Allows the training to focus on identified weaknesses.
- c. Allows the unit to practice the mission STX before conducting a higher-echelon FTX.
- d. Saves time by providing most of the information needed to develop a vehicle for training.

**ENGINEER BATTALION
(HEAVY DIVISION/CORPS)
FTX
5-1-E0001
CONDUCT MOBILITY OPERATIONS**

1. Objective. This sample FTX trains collective, leader, and individual tasks in the battalion's operation (Conduct Mobility Operations).

2. Interface. This FTX supports the task force's (TF) requirement to conduct combat operations.

3. Training Enhancers.

a. The training matrix in Chapter 2, shows the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform the battalion headquarters (HQ) mission. Training that will improve its ability to perform its mission are--

(1) Planning, controlling, and coordinating mobility operations. Training may be conducted in garrison and the local training areas by one of the following methods:

- (a) Classroom instruction.
- (b) Amap exercise (MAPEX) combined with a sand-table exercise.
- (c) A command post exercise (CPX) conducted in garrison.

- (d) A command field exercise (CFX) conducted in a field environment.
 - (e) A tactical exercise without troops (TEWT).
 - (f) A communications exercise (COMEX).
 - (g) Simulations and games.
- (2) Establishing an aggressive spirit. An aggressive spirit can be established in a unit and its leaders by engaging in the following activities:
- (a) Aggressive unit sports and a physical-fitness program.
 - (b) Leader and individual confidence courses.
 - (c) Appropriate training films that have a positive, aggressive effect on the soldiers.
 - (d) Awareness of the unit's heritage.
- b. This exercise begins with the receipt of a warning order (WO) and ends upon the completions of area-damage-control (ADC) activities. Figure 4-1 illustrates the FTX's general scenario. Table 4-2 is a suggested scenario and Figure 4-2 is the movement order for the scenario.

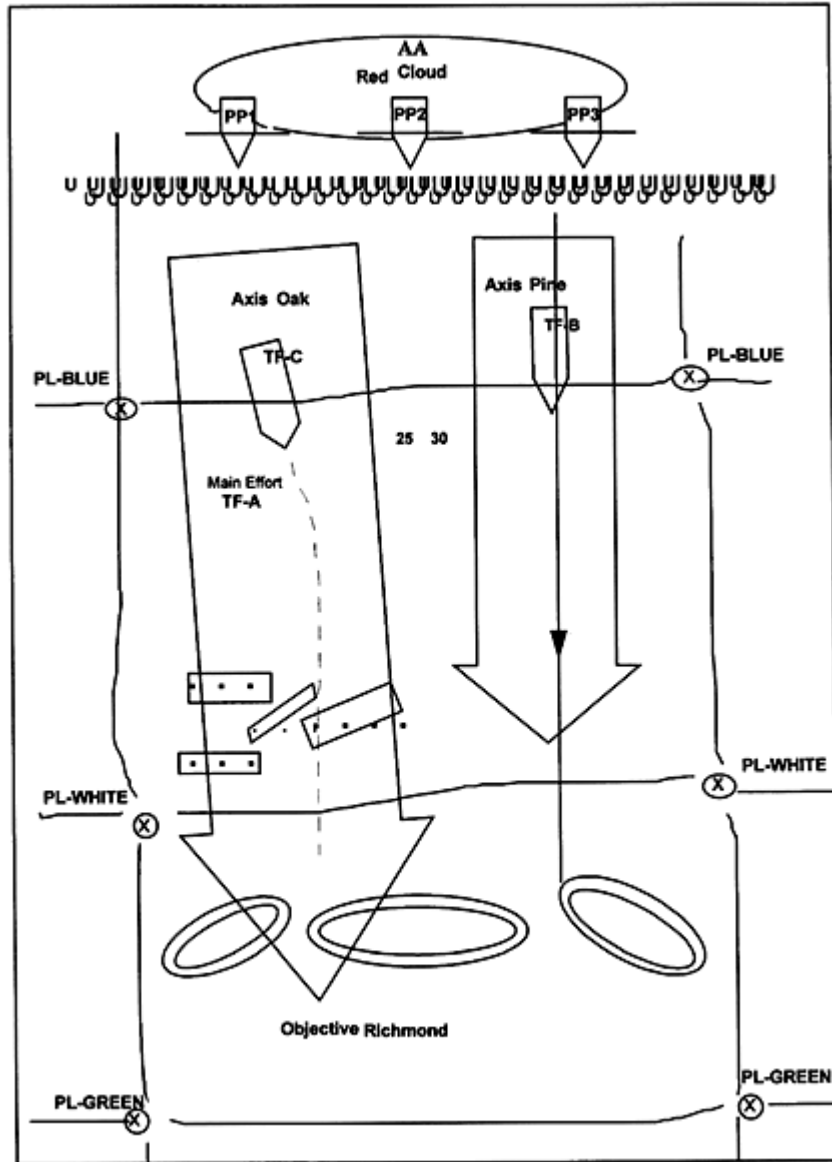


Figure 4-1. General Scenario FTX

Table 4-2. Sample Suggested Scenario

Event	Action	Estimated Time
<u>Module 1</u>		
1	Receive a Bridge Warning Order	15 minutes
2	Receive a Bridge Movement Order	30 minutes
3	Plan and Issue a Movement Order	2.5 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	6 hours
5	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	4 hours
6	Receive a Brigade Warning Order	15 minutes
7	Receive a Brigade Operation Order (OPORD)	2 hours
8	Conduct an After-Action Review (AAR)	1 hour

<u>Module 2</u>		
9	Conduct Precombat Operations	20 hours
	Plan/Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance	8 hours
	Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment	4 hours
	Prepare an Engineer Estimate	3 hours
	Prepare an Engineer Annex Hour	1 hour
10	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
<u>Module 3</u>		
11	Monitor the Conduct of the Attack, Coordinate, and Issue Fragmentary Orders (FRAGOs), as appropriate	9.5 hours
<u>Module 4</u>		
12	Move to the AA	4 hours
13	Conduct a Final AAR	2 hours
*	Defend Against an Air Attack	
*	Control Combat Formations	
*	Prepare an OPORD	
*	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	
*	Manage Battlefield Stress	
*	Use Passive Air-Defense Measures	
*	Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)	
*	Operate a Net-Control Station	
*	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel, Voice Radio Station	
Total time:		69 hours
*Note: These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.		

Movement Order

1. SITUATION. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn to vicinity NK403087. He is being reinforced and is preparing to counterattack. The division is moving to occupy an AA in preparation of combat operations.
2. MISSION. The 25th Brigade moves by tactical road march via route Monroe, commencing 011600 hours to AA vicinity NK 243567. The order of march is TF A, TF B, and TF C. The interval between serials is 30 minutes. Close on AA no later than 01900 hours.
3. EXECUTION.
 - a. Concept of Movement. TF A will be the lead element with assistance of the military police (MP) for traffic control. TF B will follow 30 minutes after TF A. Brigade HQ will follow 30 minutes after TF B. TF C will follow 30 minutes after brigade HQ.
 - b. Tasks to Subordinate Units. The MPs will provide traffic control for the brigade movement.
 - c. Detailed Timings. None
 - d. Coordinating Instructions.
 - (1) Start point (SP) NK243567 at 011600 hours.
 - (2) Route Monroe listing command post (CP).
 - (3) Quarters party is the 25th Battalion.
 - (4) Vehicle markings according to the unit is standing operating procedure (SOP).
 - (5) Additional information, as required.
4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Per SOP.
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
 - a. Command.
 - b. Signal.
 - (1) Current signal operation instructions (SOI) are in effect.
 - (2) Visual signals according to the unit's SOP.

Figure 4-2. Movement Order

4-4. General Situation.

- a. Contact with the enemy has been broken. He has withdrawn deep to the rear. He is being reinforced and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest intelligence summary (INTSUM)

indicates that the enemy may have a company-size strong point in the brigade sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.

b. This exercise is conducted under all environments during both day and night operations. The battalion HQ is operating in an arid environment. The battalion HQ will operate under threat of nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) attacks, ground or air attacks, indirect fire, and electronic warfare (EW).

c. This exercise is conducted under Threat Level I, II, and/or III attacks.

d. The battalion HQ should be prepared to relocate at least every three to four days.

e. The unit should be prepared to move by echelons while continuing to provide support to the assigned area.

4-5. Special Situation.

a. The lead TF encounters an unexpected obstacle that prevents bypass. Enemy contact has been made. The brigade commander gives the following FRAGO:

“TFs conduct in-stride breaching operations and continue the attack.”

b. After completing the breaches, the TFs receive fire from an enemy position and encounter complex obstacles that prevent bypass. The attack is stalled. The unit is ordered to move in.

4-6. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum trainers and observers/controllers (Os/Cs). This exercise can be conducted by the battalion commander/Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) who will be the trainer and primary evaluator. At least one other controller/evaluator is required for each engineer platoon and opposing forces (OPFOR) platoon involved in this FTX.

b. OPFOR.

(1) OPFOR is required for the exercise to simulate Threat Level II and III activities.

(2) OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3) Multiple Integrated Laser-Engagement System (MILES) can be used or the trainer and O/C can assess the damage to equipment and personnel casualties.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. Each trainer and O/C needs a vehicle and a radio. Radios are required for OPFOR vehicles during mounted operations.

d. Maneuver area. Depending on the local training area, an area with a minimum dimension of 15 by 6 kilometers for the hasty attack is desirable. The terrain should offer multiple covered and concealed approaches to the objective area. Using terrain that limits the leader to “geographical and or school solution” does not allow an evaluation of the unit’s ability to conduct a terrain analysis and to select an appropriate course of action.

e. Consolidated Support Requirements. Battalion support requirements can be calculated by adding the total of the requirements for each participating subordinate element. See Table 4-3.

Table 4-3. Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX 5-1-E0001

--

Ammunition	DODIC	Estimated Basic Load
5.56 millimeters (mm)	A080	150 rounds per rifle
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per squad automatic weapon (SAW)
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2
Antitank Weapon-Effect Simulator System (ATWEES) (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolitions) or 6 per squad
Demolitions (See the note below.)		
Mine-clearing line charge (MICLIC)		4 per company with 2 reloads
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad
Charge, block trinitrotoluene (TNT)		50 per squad
Modernized demolition initiator (MDI) M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon
MDI ignitors		60 each platoon
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon
Other Items		
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each
CLASS IV		
Concertina wire		
Mines		
brdrMILES Equipment	Company	Evaluators OPFOR
Armored personnel carrier (APC)	13	13/4
Caliber .50 system	15	13/4
M240 system	2	
M19 blank firing adapter	15	13/4
M16 system	120	120/28
M60 machine-gun system	13	13/2
Controller guns		8
Small-arms alignment fixture		2
NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to use) during the FTX.		

4-7. Training-and-Evaluation-Outline (T&EO) Sequence. Table 4-4 list the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that are used to evaluate the FTX.

Table 4-4. T&EOs Used in Evaluating FTX 5-1-E0001

Task	Number	Page
Disseminate Intelligence Information	5-1-70400	5-27
Maintain Operations Security	71-3-C0232	5-36
Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Battalion)	5-1-70001	5-61
Control a Hasty Gap Crossing	5-1-70500	5-65
Plan Breaching Operations	5-1-70520	5-69
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	5-2-C0301	5-83
Prepare for a Chemical Attack	3-2-C0202	5-86
Conduct Administrative Operations (Battalion)	5-1-71008	5-124
Perform Unit Maintenance Operations	5-2-71133	5-140
Treat Casualties	8-2-R0337	5-152
Perform Field-Sanitation Measures	8-2-C0315	5-145
Evacuate Casualties	8-2-R0316	5-148
Provide Food-Service Support	10-2-C0317	5-158
Provide Company-Supply Support	10-2-C0320	5-165
Process Personnel and Administrative Action	12-1-C0406	5-198
Prepare an Engineer Annex	5-1-70003	5-198
Prepare an OPORD	5-1-70008	5-201
Control Combat Operations	5-1-70018	5-204
Report Obstacle Information	5-1-70025	5-208
Report Engineer Information	5-1-70026	5-211
Analyze Battlefield Information	5-1-70415	5-214
Control Combined-Arms Breaching	5-1-70048	5-216
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	5-2-71018	5-222
Operate a Net-Control Station	5-4-70020	5-228
Establish Internal Communications	5-4-70024	5-231
Establish External Communications	5-4-70028	5-235
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel, Voice Radio Net	11-2-C0302	5-238
Combat Battlefield Stress	12-1-C0401	5-241
Report Casualties	12-1-C0403	5-244
Conduct Replacement Operations	12-1-C0405	5-246

8. OPORD. Figure 4-3 shows a sample OPORD using the outline provided in Chapter 4.

1. SITUATION.

a. Enemy Forces. Contact with the enemy has been broken. He has withdrawn deep to the rear. He is being reinforced and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest INTSUM indicates that the enemy may have a company-size strong point in the brigade sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.

b. Friendly Forces. 5th Division attacks to secure Objective Richmond, then assists passage of the exploitation force (24th Division). This operation will rapidly penetrate the main defensive belt to draw the 10th Independent Tank Regiment (ITR) south and fix it in a zone.

(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.

(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.

(3) Supporting fires. 4th Battalion is in direct support.

2. MISSION. 25th Brigade conducts a passage of lines and attacks to secure Objective Richmond. On order, the 25th Brigade continues movement forward of Phase Line (PL) Green.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Concept of the Operation. See the overlay developed by the trainer.

(1) Maneuver. 25th Brigade departs AA NK 243567 and conducts a passage of lines through the elements of 3rd Division. It conducts a penetration with two TFs, with one TF following as the brigade's reserve. TF A will be the main effort and attack along Axis Oak. TF B attacks along Axis Pine and is the supporting attack. On order, TF C (trailing along Axis Oak) becomes the main effort and continues the attack to Objective Richmond. The intent is to gain contact with the enemy, locate, and fix his main body so that the division can conduct envelopments to destroy him. It is necessary to destroy his combat outposts. We must quickly reorganize and continue movement until we find the main body. The TF that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If they cannot, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver by the remainder of the brigade. Movement will continue to PL Green if no contact is gained, and past PL Green, on order.

(2) Fire Support. The priority of fires is to TF A initially and to the TF in contact once contact is made.

(3) Mines, Obstacles, and Fortifications. Critical checkpoints and identified obstacles shown on obstacles overlay.

b. Subunit missions, as required.

c. Engineer. The priority of support is to the two lead TFs. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the TF in contact. Be prepared to support a hasty defense on order.

Figure 4-3. Sample OPORD

- (1) Report all enemy contact.
 - (2) Report all enemy obstacles.
 - (3) Report the crossing of phase lines
 - (4) Additional information as required.
4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per division SOP.
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
- a. Command.
 - b. Signal.
 - (1) Current SOI.
 - (2) Radio listening silence until initial contact with enemy.

Figure 4-3. Sample OPORD (continued)

CHAPTER 5

Training and Evaluation Outlines

5-1. General. This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the mission training plan (MTP) and the collective training of the unit. T&EOs are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks that support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in a situational training exercise (STX), in a field training exercise (FTX), or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

5-2. Structure. The Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific Battlefield Operating System (BOS).

5-3. Format. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

- a. Element. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that perform the task.
- b. Task. This describes the action to be performed by the unit and provides the task number.
- c. References. They are in parenthesis following the task number. The reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference, do not underline the reference.
- d. Iteration. This is used to identify the number of times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The "M" identifies when the task is performed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.
- e. Commander/leader assessment. This is used by the unit leadership to assess their proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature. Therefore, use all available evaluation data and subunit leader input to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:
 - (1) T - Trained. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.
 - (2) P - Needs practice. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve the task to standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.
 - (3) U - Untrained. The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.
- f. Task conditions. The conditions describe the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.
- g. Task standards.
 - (1) The task standards state the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training and be understood by every soldier.
 - (2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the

mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) conditions. The conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common baseline for unit performance.

h. Task steps and performance measures. This is a list of actions that are required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual task and their references. An asterisk (*) to the left of the step number indicates the leader tasks within each T&EO. Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

i. GO/NO-GO column. This column is provided for annotating the platoon’s performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a "GO" for the task step to be successfully performed.

j. Task performance/evaluation summary block. This block provides the trainer with a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as "GO." It also provides the evaluator with a means to rate the units demonstrated performance as a "GO" or "NO-GO." It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

k. Supporting individual tasks. This is a list of all supporting individual tasks that are required to correctly perform the task. The reference number, task number, and task title for each individual task are listed.

l. Opposing forces (OPFOR) tasks. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. The standards ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or "lose" to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished--not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

5-4. Usage. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task or a group of tasks such as an STX or an FTX. Refer to Figure 5-1.

Develop Intelligence

PERFORM ENGINEER BATTLEFIELD ASSESSMENT (05-1-0027) 5-5
 Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection (05-1-0412)..... 5-7
 Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A)..... 5-10
 Disseminate Combat Information and Intelligence (BN) (34-1-2005.05-T01A)..... 5-12
 Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)..... 5-16

Deploy/Conduct Maneuver

Fight as Engineers (05-1-1200) 5-18
 Conduct Quartering-Party Operations (05-2-0908.05-R01A)..... 5-21
 Reorganize as Infantry (05-2-1200)..... 5-24
 Fight as Infantry (05-2-1215) 5-26
 Secure at a Halt (05-3-1232) 5-32
 React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A)..... 5-34
 Perform Passage of Lines (07-2-0333.05-T01A)..... 5-36
 Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A) 5-40
 Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A)..... 5-43
 Establish Unit Defense (07-3-0219.05-T01A)..... 5-47
 Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A)..... 5-51
 Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A)..... 5-55

Prepare Personnel for Deployment (12-1-0409.05-T01A).....	5-58
Protect the Force	
Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A)	5-60
Conduct a Thorough Decontamination Operation (03-2-C312.05-T01A).....	5-62
Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A)	5-66
Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A)	5-68
Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A).....	5-70
Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A).....	5-72
Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A).....	5-74
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A).....	5-76
React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A)	5-78
Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A)	5-80
Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A).....	5-82
Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A)	5-84
Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A)	5-87
PREPARE AN OBSTACLE PLAN (BATTALION) (05-1-0001)	5-89
Support a River-Crossing Operation (05-1-0600).....	5-92
Plan/Supervise Air-Assault Operations (05-1-0906).....	5-97
Conduct Deployment Operations (05-1-1026).....	5-100
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-0301).....	5-103
Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-0911).....	5-106
Conduct Self-Extraction from Remotely-Delivered Mines (05-3-0113)	5-110
Disable Critical Equipment and Material (05-3-0210).....	5-113
Establish Jobsite Security (05-3-0904.05-R01A).....	5-116
Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions (05-5-0302)	5-121
React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A)	5-125
Use Passive Air-Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A).....	5-127
Take Active Combined-Arms Air-Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A)	5-129
Perform Risk-Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A).....	5-132
Perform CSS and Sustainment	
Coordinate for Medical Services (05-1-0050).....	5-134
Conduct Logistics Operations (05-1-1000).....	5-137
Coordinate for Food-Service Support (05-2-0051).....	5-140
Conduct Combat Refueling Operations (05-2-1024).....	5-144
Plan/Direct Aerial Logistics Operations (05-3-1054)	5-146
Conduct Battlefield Stress-Reduction and Stress-Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A)	5-150
Perform Field-Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A).....	5-152
Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-0319.05-T01A)	5-154
Install and Operate a Radio Teletypewriter (RATT) Set (11-5-0081.05-T01A).....	5-156
Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A).....	5-158
Report Casualties (12-1-0403.05-T01A).....	5-161
Perform Strength Accounting (12-1-0404.05-T01A).....	5-163
Conduct Replacement Operations (12-1-0405.05-T01A).....	5-165
Process Personnel and Administrative Actions (12-1-0406.05-T01A)	5-167
Provide Legal Support (12-1-0410.05-T01A)	5-170
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A).....	5-172
Conduct Unit-Level Maintenance Operations (43-2-0001.05-T01A).....	5-174
Exercise Command and Control	
Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion) (05-1-0002)	5-177
Prepare an Engineer Annex Battalion (05-1-0003)	5-183

Report Engineer Information (05-1-0026).....	5-186
DEVELOP AND IMPLEMENT AN AREA-DAMAGE-CONTROL (ADC) PLAN (05-1-0029).....	5-189
Control Area-Damage-Control Operations (05-1-0031)	5-191
Control a Base in a Base Cluster (05-1-0035).....	5-193
Control Airfield Damage Repair Operations (05-1-0045)	5-195
Plan/Control Augmentation Support (05-1-0721)	5-198
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (05-3-1018.05-R01A)	5-201
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A)	5-207
Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A)	5-209
Participate in the Operations Order Process (12-1-0408.05-T01A)	5-213
Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-0338.05-T01A)	5-215
Maintain Platoon Strength (12-3-0001.05-T01A).....	5-218

Figure 5-1. List of T&EO's

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: PERFORM ENGINEER BATTLEFIELD ASSESSMENT (05-1-0027)
(FM 5-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is supporting continuous tactical operations. The supported formation initiates planning for the next operation, providing known information on weather and enemy forces to the engineer staff. The divisional battalion (only) provides staff engineers (assistant division engineer [ADE] and brigade engineers) to the division. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The commander and staff continuously have an accurate and timely battlefield assessment of the area of operations (AO).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or staff engineer determines the impact of the AO characteristics on engineer courses of action.</p> <p>a. Analyzed weather for precipitation, limited visibility, and temperature impact on the--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Trafficability of enemy and friendly combat vehicles. (2) Water obstacles' depth, flow rate, and bank conditions. (3) Ability to dig positions and tank ditches. (4) Positioning of obstacle. (5) Employment of mines in severe weather conditions. (6) Engineer vehicle capabilities to maneuver in limited visibility and reduce trafficability and keep pace with maneuver unit fighting vehicles. <p>b. Analyzed the terrain.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Observation and fields of fire. Analyzed the impact on obstacle placement (both friendly and enemy) of items, buildings, and vegetation to clear to improve observation. (2) Cover and concealment. Identified concealed locations for engineer equipment and materials (especially during breaching and river-crossing operations.) Identified possible combat trails offering cover and concealment from enemy ground, air, and satellite surveillance. (3) Obstacles. Identified existing natural and man-made obstacles and their impact on maneuver, avenues of approach (AA), and placement of reinforcing obstacles. Evaluated these with respect to friendly and enemy maneuver. (4) Key or decisive terrain. Determined potential engineer tasks required to facilitate friendly control and/or deny enemy control. (5) Avenues of approach. Identified friendly and enemy mobility corridors and AA, based upon the unit. Evaluated engineer actions to enhance or hinder movement on these AA. <p>c. Analyzed any other characteristics important to the engineer plan.</p> <p>* 2. The battalion S2 or staff engineer, working with the supported unit's Assistant Chief of Staff, Intelligence (G2) or S2, develops the enemy engineer situation.</p> <p>a. Estimated the strength of enemy engineer units, including any information (confirmed, suspected, or based on doctrinal techniques) concerning reinforcement to enemy engineers from higher echelons.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Determined the disposition of enemy engineer units and other units having engineer-related capability, including helicopters and artillery units with remotely delivered mine capability. c. Assessed specific capabilities for breaching, gap crossing, obstacle emplacement, survivability, and emplaced remotely delivered mines (from aircraft or artillery). d. Evaluated recent and present significant activities, including engineer battlefield tactics and techniques, to identify weaknesses/strengths. e. Predicted possible enemy courses of action and the impact of the engineer situation on these courses of action. <p>* 3. The battalion S2 or staff engineer develops a situational template of enemy engineer operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Stated the probable levels of support and engineer plan. b. Incorporated weather and terrain data. c. Developed an overlay of anticipated enemy obstacles, fortifications, and other significant enemy engineer activities. <p>* 4. The battalion S2 provides the assessment to the commander, the battalion staff, and the supported unit's S2 or G2.</p> <p>* 5. The staff engineer provides the assessment to the other members of the battle staff.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection (05-1-0412)

(FM 34-54)
(FM 3-34.2)
(FM 5-33)

(FM 20-3)
(FM 5-100)
(FM 5-34)

(FM 20-32)
(FM 5-170)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The engineer battalion is conducting continuous tactical operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Develop and initiate a collection plan to gather the essential elements of information (EEI), interpret and summarize information, and disseminate the information for continued mission analysis and/or support. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) develops the intelligence collection plan. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the priority intelligence requirements (PIR). Normally, this was in the form of a question, but can be a statement. b. Identified detailed information required to answer the PIR. These were called EEI and included but were not limited to-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Friendly engineer capabilities. (2) Enemy engineer capabilities. (3) Enemy conventional and scatterable minefield locations. (4) Terrain. (5) Waterways or drainage. (6) Ports and harbors. (7) Roads (including military load classification (MLC). (8) Railroads. (9) Trafficability. (10) Airfields. (11) Natural and man-made obstacles. (12) Contaminated areas. (13) Built-up areas. (14) Engineer resources. (15) Electricity; gas; water; and petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) resources. c. Identified units to collect the information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Used the maneuver units by placing the PIR and EEI in the maneuver operation order (OPORD). (2) Used engineer units by placing the PIR and EEI in the engineer OPORD. 2. The S2 or S3 implements a collection plan. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed engineer companies to do specific reconnaissances. b. Briefed reconnaissance personnel on -- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) The reconnaissance objectives. (2) The area or route to reconnoiter. (3) The suggested reconnaissance method. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(4) Any additional guidance from the commander (for example, specific items to look for in a given area).</p> <p>c. Provided units with forms and materials for the reconnaissance.</p> <p>d. Consolidated the following information:</p> <p>(1) The reconnaissance reports forwarded by the engineer companies to the S2.</p> <p>(2) The intelligence reports forwarded by the Maneuver units and the PIR answered by the Maneuver units through the G2/S2 to the engineer S2.</p> <p>(3) The reconnaissance and intelligence reports that have been collocated and summerized.</p> <p>e. Maintained the following files:</p> <p>(1) An intelligence log recording all incoming and outgoing communications.</p> <p>(2) Engineer reconnaissance reports.</p> <p>(3) The intelligence summary (INTSUM) and intelligence report (INTREP).</p> <p>(4) Engineer resource reports.</p> <p>(5) Minefield records.</p> <p>(6) Scatterable minefield reports.</p> <p>(7) Obstacle reports.</p> <p>f. Developed intelligence by extracting information pertinent to the PIR and EEI from the reconnaissance and intelligence reports.</p> <p>3. The S2 or S3 completes or updates the situation analysis of the engineer estimate.</p> <p>4. The S2 or S3 disseminates the intelligence to engineer, maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service-support (CSS) units.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-196-4012	CONDUCT PLATOON RECONNAISSANCE MISSIONS	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Disrupt an Engineer Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0022)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting an engineer reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts an engineer reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from accomplishing its assigned engineer reconnaissance. 4. Surprises the unit conducting the reconnaissance.

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A)
(FM 19-40)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The enemy's equipment and documents have been captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element processes all captured equipment and documents based on disposition instructions and within the time standards established by higher headquarters (HQ). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element tags all captured equipment and documents. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Described the type of equipment and/or documents, such as maps, photos, rifles, radios, and so forth. b. Annotated the date and time of capture. c. Provided the place (grid coordinates) of capture. d. Noted the capturing unit. e. Furnished the circumstances of the capture. f. Identified the prisoner's name on the tag, if the items were taken from the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs). * 2. The element leader reports the capture of the equipment and documents to higher HQ. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Described the type of equipment and/or documents. b. Stated the date and time of capture. c. Identified the capturing unit. d. Furnished the place (grid coordinates) of the capture. * 3. The element leader disposes of the equipment and documents according to the guidance received from higher HQ. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Destroyed, secured, evacuated, or abandoned the equipment. b. Evacuated the documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: CMD SECTION
 S2 SECTION
 S3 SECTION

TASK: Disseminate Combat Information and Intelligence (BN) (34-1-2005.05-T01A)
 (FM 34-1) (AR 380-5) (AR 530-1)
 (FM 100-5) (FM 101-5) (FM 21-26)
 (FM 21-31) (FM 34-3) (FM 34-60)
 (FM 34-80)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is engaged in combat operations and has received a mission from higher headquarters (HQ). Contact with the enemy has occurred. The commander provides the planning guidance and a concept for operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) section must identify the commander's intelligence requirements and complete the intelligence annex to the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN) within the time outlined in the commander's guidance. The S2 section disseminates and processes the information and intelligence and employs security measures. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The S2 section identifies the commander's intelligence requirements. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received the commander's planning guidance and the concept of operations after receiving the mission from the higher HQ. b. Developed and prioritized the essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) and the priority intelligence requirements (PIR). c. Received the approved EEFI and PIR from the commander. d. Ensured that the appropriate essential elements of threat information (EETI) required for various mobility and/or countermobility or survivability and the general engineering projects were identified. The requirements for EETI were developed in coordination with the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). 2. The S2 section completes the intelligence annex to the OPORD and/or the OPLAN in the time outlined in the commander's guidance. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepared the intelligence estimate. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Reviewed the corps or division Assistant Chief of Staff's (Intelligence) (G2) estimate and intelligence summary. (2) Extracted the pertinent mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) information. (3) Furnished the information to the battalion staff to assist in staff planning. b. Furnished the commander an intelligence estimate, as required. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Noted the particular enemy capabilities and vulnerabilities to include engineer capabilities of immediate concern to the deployed battalion assets. (2) Incorporated significant intelligence into the formal estimate. (3) Disseminated the estimates to the staff. c. Prepared the intelligence portion of the OPORD and the intelligence annex. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Reviewed the division's and the corp's PIR. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Established the information requirements for the battalion's security plans.</p> <p>(3) Coordinated with the S3 regarding the use of organic assets to collect information.</p> <p>d. Conducted the staff coordination.</p> <p>(1) Provided the staff with an overview of the current enemy situation to assist in the staff planning process.</p> <p>(2) Reviewed and provided input to the staff's mission analysis.</p> <p>3. The S2 section disseminates the combat information and transmits the intelligence to the appropriate units and agencies in time for the commanders to plan and mass forces at the proper time and place to successfully influence and win the battle.</p> <p>a. Disseminated the combat information.</p> <p>(1) Disseminated the highly perishable combat information in a spot-report format, immediately after receipt.</p> <p>(2) Ensured that the division or corps G2 received the combat information, as required.</p> <p>(3) Ensured that the battalion staff and subordinate units received the combat information, as required.</p> <p>b. Disseminated the intelligence.</p> <p>(1) Received continuous updates from the division or corps G2.</p> <p>(2) Disseminated the intelligence to the higher, lower, and adjacent HQ by the most expeditious means available, such as frequency modulated (FM), secure, or courier.</p> <p>(3) Ensured that the battalion S3 and all the staff elements within the tactical operations center (TOC) received the intelligence.</p> <p>c. The S2 section receives and disseminates the enemy's nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC)-operations data.</p> <p>(1) Received and recorded reports of the enemy's NBC capabilities on friendly systems.</p> <p>(2) Evaluated the effects of the enemy's NBC capabilities. Reported this evaluation to subordinate units and the staff.</p> <p>d. The S2 section prepares the reports.</p> <p>(1) Reviewed the decision support template provided by the division or corps G2.</p> <p>(2) Reviewed the division or corps estimate of the enemy's most probable course of action (COA).</p> <p>(3) Used the report formats that were provided.</p> <p>4. The S2 section processes the information by recording, evaluating, analyzing, and integrating it into the existing intelligence to aid the commander in reaching a conclusion.</p> <p>a. The S2 section records the information.</p> <p>(1) Maintained the intelligence journal, including the record of important reports and messages that have been received and transmitted and the actions taken in response, covering a 24-hour period.</p> <p>(2) Posted the situation map (SITMAP) with information and intelligence aspects of the current disposition and activities of the enemy.</p> <p>b. The S2 section evaluates the information.</p> <p>(1) Determined if the information was pertinent.</p> <p>(2) Verified the reliability of the source or agency.</p> <p>(3) Validated the credibility of the information.</p> <p>c. The S2 section analyzes the information and intelligence.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Integrated the incoming intelligence with the information in the database.</p> <p>(2) Assessed the information and the intelligence.</p> <p>(3) Formulated and test hypothesized about the enemy's activities or the impact of the area of operations (AO) characteristics on the mission.</p> <p>(4) Formulated conclusions based on available information of the enemy's situation, disposition, and probable COA.</p> <p>NOTE: The conclusion should answer what the information means in relation to the AO, the enemy information, and the enemy's use of tactical deception or counter deception.</p> <p>5. The S2 section employs security measures to ensure that the classified intelligence information is protected and access is denied to the threat.</p> <p>a. The S2 section coordinates the personnel security clearance program.</p> <p>(1) Coordinated with the Adjutant (US Army) (S1) and the S3 to determine the degree of security clearance required for each duty position in the headquarters and subordinate units.</p> <p>(2) Supervised the submission of the appropriate forms, documents, and requests for security clearance.</p> <p>(3) Maintained a roster of unit personnel, indicating their security clearance level. Distributed copies to the HQ and subordinate units, as required.</p> <p>b. The S2 section administers the information security program.</p> <p>(1) Ensured that the classification of the documents was monitored.</p> <p>(2) Ensured that the access, dissemination, and accounting procedures for classified documents were established for the HQ. Ensured that these procedures were monitored in subordinate units.</p> <p>(3) Supervised and monitored the storage and safekeeping of the classified information in the HQ and subordinate units.</p> <p>c. The S2 section administers the sensitive compartmented-information (SCI) security program.</p> <p>(1) Prepared, along with the HQ commander, a physical-security plan for inside the battalion TOC.</p> <p>(2) Established a program to control access to the facilities.</p> <p>(3) Advised the HQ commander on the threat to ensure that an adequate security force is provided to the TOC.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)

(AR 530-1)
(FM 24-33)
(FM 34-60)

(AR 380-5)
(FM 24-35)

(FM 19-30)
(FM 24-35-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is operating where the enemy can detect it. The enemy can employ electronic warfare (EW) measures and air- and ground-reconnaissance units. It can also use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, intentions, and any essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) or from surprising its main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The leaders check or perform information-security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Disseminated the information on a need-to-know basis. b. Prohibited the fraternization with civilians, as applicable. c. Conducted alerts, deployment preparations, and loading operations to minimize detection. d. Ensured that maps contained only the minimum-essential information. e. Conducted inspections and gave briefings to ensure that personnel did not carry any details of military activities in their personal materials, such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs. f. Sanitized all planning areas and positions before departure. <p>2. The platoon performs camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used natural concealment and camouflage materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground and air observation. b. Moved on covered and concealed routes. c. Covered all reflective surfaces and unit markings with nonreflective material, such as cloth, mud, or a camouflage stick. d. Covered or removed all vehicle markings. <p>3. The platoon camouflages the individual's positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages the equipment to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the foliage was not stripped near the unit's position. b. Camouflaged the earth berms. c. Ensured that the camouflage nets were properly erected. d. Avoided crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads. e. Erased any tracks leading into the positions. f. Ensured that the vehicles that were parked in the shadows were moved as the shadows shifted. g. Replaced and replenished the camouflage, as needed. h. Avoided movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection. <p>4. The platoon employs communications security (COMSEC), and the company's net control station (NCS) enforces COMSEC.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Enforced the procedures in the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the signal supplemental instructions (SSI), such as challenges, authentications decoding, and call signs and frequencies. The platoon ensured that the monitored traffic did not reveal information to the enemy.</p> <p>b. Employed approved radiotelephone operator (RATELO) procedures.</p> <p>c. Followed the COMSEC procedures, such as keeping transmissions short, using the lowest possible power settings, using directional antennas, changing transmission patterns, and maintaining radio silence.</p> <p>d. Followed the procedures for operations during jamming.</p> <p>e. Made maximum use of the messenger and wire service.</p> <p>f. Used visual signals according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>5. The platoon employs physical-security measures.</p> <p>a. Employed the observation posts (OPs).</p> <p>b. Employed the counter-reconnaissance patrols.</p> <p>c. Followed the stand-to procedures.</p> <p>d. Employed mines and obstacles, when permitted.</p> <p>e. Tied in with adjacent units for coordination and fire.</p> <p>f. Used the challenge and password.</p> <p>g. Limited the access into the unit's area.</p> <p>h. Safeguarded weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents.</p> <p>i. Picked up the litter.</p> <p>j. Employed the air guards.</p> <p>* 6. The platoon leader, and all leaders, enforces noise and light discipline.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-325-4425	EMPLOY AN M18A1 CLAYMORE MINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-325-4426	RECOVER AN M18A1 CLAYMORE MINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0801	CHALLENGE PERSONS ENTERING YOUR AREA	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Fight as Engineers (05-1-1200)
(FM 5-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is conducting continuous tactical operations in all weather conditions. The commanding general directs the battalion to fight as engineers. Digital units have performed functionality checks of all digital systems. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: According to the battalion's standing operating procedure (SOP), the engineer battalion reorganizes as an engineer or infantry battalion within the required period of time. All equipment and personnel not used in this role move to an equipment park or are attached to another unit. The reorganized battalion receives augmentation from air defense, fire support, antitank units, and a medical element if available. Digital units have the capability to send and receive information via frequency modulated (FM) and digital means to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The battalion commander decides who will be the unit's fire-support officer (FSO).</p> <p>2. The FSO makes immediate coordination for air-defense artillery, artillery support, and other necessary support for the unit.</p> <p>3. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) updates the personnel status. If required, requests personnel to bring the battalion to its authorized strength.</p> <p>4. If necessary, the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) organizes scout elements from organic assets to accomplish assigned missions.</p> <p>5. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) prepares for infantry-type missions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requested any support that the FSO needed; for example, air-defense artillery, mortars, field artillery, and antitank elements. b. Initiated the estimation process for infantry-type missions. c. Designated the company's assembly areas (AAs). <p>6. The Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) prepares field and combat trains.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Organized a support platoon consisting of all fuel, ammunition, and cargo hauling assets to support the line companies' new needs. b. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnarounds. Camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation. c. Requested additional Class V (ammunition) required by organic weapons and antitank systems, as necessary. d. Consolidated unit mess and maintenance assets under the battalion's control in the field trains. e. Designated the location of the engineer equipment park and the controlling team chief, if necessary. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Located the equipment park in a covered and concealed position. (2) Located the equipment park on defensible terrain. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat-service-support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

TASK: Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Assembly-Area (AA) Activities (5-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: Intelligence reports indicate platoon- and company-size enemy units are operating in the opposing forces (OPFOR) area of operations. Enemy units can defend from assembly areas with direct fire, antiarmor weapons, and indirect fire. The enemy has close air support (CAS) and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) capabilities.

STANDARD: The OPFOR locates and disrupts the enemy's AA activities. 1. Locates the element's AA. 2. Probes the AA with squad- or team-size elements. 3. Inflicts more than 5 percent casualties on the element. 4. Disrupts the element's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the element's allotted time).

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Conduct Quartering-Party Operations (05-2-0908.05-R01A)
 (FM 71-1) (FM 101-5) (FM 20-32)
 (FM 5-10) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: A unit is directed to move to a new location and establish an assembly area (AA). Digital units have performed functionality checks of all digital systems and they are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The quartering party departs ahead of the unit's main body and completes all tasks in the new AA before the main body arrives. The unit moves all personnel and equipment to the assigned position within the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Digital units report through digital means (FBCB2) their locations IAW the unit TACSOP. The time required to perform this task is increased when performed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader organizes the quartering party. The unit leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected a noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC). b. Selected a security element or coordinated for security to be provided by the supported maneuver unit. c. Selected subordinate-element representatives according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). d. Organized a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) reconnaissance party from the NCOIC, the security element, and the subordinate-element representatives to satisfy the threat conditions. e. Conducted troop-leading procedures. f. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). g. Reviewed the unit's SOP and tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). h. Conducted risk-management and safety briefings according to the unit's SOP or TACSOP. <p>2. The quartering party conducts rehearsals on minesweeping operations, actions on contact for the security teams, and movement guide procedures. NOTE: Conduct a rehearsal using one of the following rehearsal types: the confirmation brief, the back brief, the combined-arms rehearsal, the battle drill, or the SOP rehearsal (for additional information, see Field Manual [FM] 101-5).</p> <p>* 3. The quartering-party leader conducts a map reconnaissance, identifying the start point (SP), potential ambush sites, checkpoints (CPs), rest stops, and the AA. NOTE: The route used by the quartering party can be the same as the route used by the unit's main body, as long as the security was maintained along the route. If security was not maintained, the main body should conduct a route clearance to the new AA.</p> <p>4. The quartering party prepares the vehicles for the convoy. The quartering party--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the vehicles and equipment. b. Loaded the vehicles according to the load plan. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Prepared the troop-carrying vehicles for combat survivability by covering the floors with a double layer of sandbags.</p> <p>d. Maintained a guard force to prevent theft and sabotage.</p> <p>* 5. The quartering-party leader briefs the convoy personnel. The quartering-party leader--</p> <p>a. Briefed the convoy route, to include the medical- and maintenance-support locations and the destination.</p> <p>b. Provided a strip map to each vehicle commander (or driver).</p> <p>c. Briefed the prescribed rate of march, the catch-up speed, and the distance between the vehicles.</p> <p>d. Briefed the accident and breakdown procedures.</p> <p>e. Briefed the limited-visibility movement procedures.</p> <p>f. Briefed the chain of command and the radio frequency.</p> <p>6. The quartering party relocates to the new AA. The quartering party--</p> <p>a. Traveled separately from, and ahead of, the main body.</p> <p>b. Reported the route limitations and other specified command interest items to the next higher commander.</p> <p>7. The quartering party reconnoiters the area and notifies the commander of the conditions. The quartering party--</p> <p>a. Reported the position of the enemy forces.</p> <p>b. Located the areas containing mines, booby traps, and NBC contamination.</p> <p>c. Evaluated the terrain conditions, to include trafficability, cover and concealment, and the availability of adequate routes into and out of the AA.</p> <p>d. Evaluated the communication system required for the AA.</p> <p>* 8. The quartering-party leader notifies the commander of the condition of the area. The quartering-party leader--</p> <p>a. Received orders and prepared the area for the main body (satisfactory conditions).</p> <p>b. Requested additional instructions from the next higher commander and moved to the alternate AA or found another location and repeated Subtask 7 (unsatisfactory conditions).</p> <p>9. The quartering party prepares the area to receive the main body. The quartering party--</p> <p>a. Secured the area.</p> <p>b. Marked or removed any obstacles and mines.</p> <p>c. Organized the area, divided it into sectors for each unit, and selected locations for the command post.</p> <p>d. Improved and marked the entrances, exits, and internal routes.</p> <p>e. Marked the vehicle positions.</p> <p>10. Each element representative from the quartering party guides his element, without delay, from the release point (RP) to that element's sector of the AA (mounted, if possible).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Disrupt Assembly-Area (AA) Activities (5-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: Intelligence reports indicate platoon- and company-size enemy units are operating in the opposing forces (OPFOR) area of operations. Enemy units can defend from assembly areas with direct fire, antiarmor weapons, and indirect fire. The enemy has close air support (CAS) and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) capabilities.

STANDARD: The OPFOR locates and disrupts the enemy's AA activities. 1. Locates the element's AA. 2. Probes the AA with squad- or team-size elements. 3. Inflicts more than 5 percent casualties on the element. 4. Disrupts the element's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the element's allotted time).

TASK: DISRUPT QUARTERING-PARTY OPERATIONS (5-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting quartering-party operations. It has established an assembly area (AA) but has not moved in the main body.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt quartering-party operations and infiltrate the enemy's AA. 1. Locates the quartering party and the AA. 2. Surprises the main body. 3. Penetrates the AA with squad-size probes. 4. Inflicts personnel casualties and vehicle damage. 5. Disrupts the unit's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the unit's allotted time).

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Reorganize as Infantry (05-2-1200)
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7J) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: A company is conducting continuous tactical operations. The battalion commander directs the unit to reorganize as infantry. A time schedule is provided. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company reorganizes into combat trains and combat elements. The company is prepared to conduct infantry operations within the specified time requirements.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander initiates a reorganization. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Issued a warning order and conducted troop-leading procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Developed a tentative plan based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) while the subordinate units prepared for the infantry operations. (2) Conducted a reconnaissance in order to complete the plan and verbally issued the completed order in a fragmentary-order (FRAGO) or an operation-order (OPORD) format. (3) Conducted the appropriate equipment and troop inspections. b. Evaluated the status of the ongoing engineer missions and issued instructions for the termination of those missions. c. Organized the company into two elements (combat and combat trains), designated the composition of each element, and determined the assembly location and the time for each element. d. Assigned command and control (C2) responsibilities for each combat element. <p>* 2. The company commander organizes the combat elements. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Retained the existing organizational structure of the engineer platoon as the basic fighting element. <p>NOTE: Platoons are configured internally according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Coordinated with battalion personnel for augmentation from maneuver and fire-support elements. c. Coordinated with the augmentation forces, prepared plans to incorporate them within the combat element, and determined their missions. Coordinated the command and support relationships and the combat-service-support (CSS) requirements and procedures. d. Assembled the combat element in the required configuration, at the correct location, and within the designated time. <p>* 3. The company commander organizes the combat trains element. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with the battalion for augmentation from combat support elements. b. Coordinated with the augmentation forces, prepared plans, incorporated them into the combat trains, and determined the-- 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Missions of the augmentation forces. (2) C2 procedures. (3) CSS requirements and procedures. (4) Requirements for additional Class V supplies required for organic weapons and augmenting mortars, including antitank systems. c. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnaround areas and camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation. d. Determined the disposition of engineer equipment and operators. e. Assembled combat trains elements in the required configuration, at the correct location, and within the time designated by the commander. * 4. The company commander designates the composition of combat and combat trains elements. * 5. The company commander reports that the unit is prepared to receive infantry missions.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Fight as Infantry (05-2-1215)

(FM 7-10)

(FM 7-7)

(FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: A company has received an operation order (OPORD) to reorganize as infantry and is preparing to engage in combat operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company organizes the platoons for combat and conducts defensive or retrograde operations according to the higher headquarter's directives. Digital units send and receive reports / orders via digital systems to provide updated situational awareness (SA) or frequency modulated (FM) radio.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander conducts troop-leading procedures after receiving the OPORD to fight as infantry. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Analyzed the mission and planned the use of any available time following the 1/3- to 2/3-time rule. b. Issued the warning order and ensured that all leaders were kept informed of their duties. c. Consulted with his leaders and made tentative plans. d. Initiated the necessary movement to prepare the subordinate units for and incorporate them into the upcoming mission. <p>NOTE: The company commander utilizes fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to initiate these actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Reconnoitered the area of operations. f. Incorporated any additional details concerning the operation (following a reconnaissance mission) and completed the plan. g. Supervised the preparation for and the execution of the mission. h. Issued the order for the mission, in verbal or in written form. <p>* 2. The company commander orders the company to conduct defensive operations.</p> <p>* 3. The company commander posts security elements to provide local security.</p> <p>4. The company identifies the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. The key terrain. b. The enemy's avenue of approach. c. The location of the company's battle position (BP), the company's target reference points (TRPs), and the engagement area. d. The limits of the company's BP and the company or team's sectors of fire. e. The location of the artillery preplotted targets. f. The primary and supplementary firing positions which-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Enabled the company to deliver effective fire, on TRPs and engagement area, at optimal ranges. (2) Provided long-range observation and interlocking fire between the adjacent units. (3) Provided a line of sight to other company or team BPs to provide mutually supporting fire. (4) Provided cover and concealment. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> g. The covered and concealed routes between the primary and supplementary firing positions. h. The covered and concealed routes into and out of the primary BP to subsequent BPs. i. The locations for the observation posts (OPs) to provide observation of the platoon's sector of fire. j. The location of the existing obstacles and the positions for reinforcing the obstacles. <p>* 5. The company commander develops a rough draft of a company or team fire plan.</p> <p>* 6. The company commander returns to the assembly area (AA) or moves the company to the rear of the BP, meets with the subordinate leaders, and issues an OPORD. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Issued an OPORD for occupying the BP, using the rough draft of the fire plan or a terrain model as a guide (in the AA). b. Issued an OPORD for occupying the BP from a vantage point, using the rough draft of the fire plan as a guide (in the BP). <p>7. The company or team moves to the rear and the flanks of the assigned BP. The company or team--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moved to a hidden position at the rear of the BP and executed actions at a halt. b. Manned the company's OPs. <p>* 8. The company or team commander issues a five-paragraph oral OPORD from a vantage point, using the rough sketch of the fire plan.</p> <p>* 9. The platoon leaders return to their units and, using hand-and-arm signals, have the drivers start their engines simultaneously.</p> <p>*10. The company or team commander issues orders for occupying the BP. The company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ordered the platoon leader to position the vehicles, without leaving tracks, in fighting positions that were difficult for the enemy to detect. b. Checked the consolidated range cards and the sketches of the platoon fire plans to make sure that there were no weak points between the platoon or flank companies. c. Finalized the fire plan in relation to the terrain to make sure that the engagement area was set on the enemy's avenue of approach, covered by mutually-supporting interlocking fire from platoons, and located between flank companies. d. Coordinated with the flank companies to ensure coverage. e. Forwarded the company fire plan to the battalion task force (TF) commander for a final check of mutually-supporting interlocking fire covering the engagement area. f. Received reports from the platoon leaders reference established platoon BPs and reported the information to the battalion TF. The reports were submitted within the defend-by time stated in the OPORD. g. Referred to the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and ordered the platoons to continue to improve their BP. 		
<p>NOTE: Do the most critical tasks first in case the enemy attacks before the defend-by time. The defend-by time is a calculated estimate of when the enemy may attack. The enemy may attack before or after this time.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*11. The company or team commander performs tactical planning and, based on the factors of the METT-TC, plans for a deliberate or hasty occupation of a BP in a built-up area. The company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted a reconnaissance of the BP and analyzed the threat force's method of attacking a built-up area. b. Analyzed the BP to identify the-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Location of the checkpoints, the phase lines, and the building numbers, as identified in the OPORD or FRAGO. (2) Observation sites and the fields of fire on the enemy's avenue of approach. (3) Primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions on the perimeter of the built-up area. (4) Positions that would provide cover and concealment. (5) Location of OPs that provide 360-degree security for a three-dimensional battlefield. (6) Covered and concealed routes into and out of the firing positions and BPs which could not be blocked by blow down from structures. (7) The location of obstacles (existing and reinforcing), buildings with basements, fire hazards, sewers, viaducts, or bridges. (8) Structures that dominate the built-up area. (9) The locations of the firing positions, in depth, throughout the built-up area. (10) Areas to integrate the dismounted infantry into the company or team defense. c. Coordinated with the adjacent units for dismounted support (as necessary) and ensured that the units were tied in with the company or the team's forces. d. Upgraded the hasty defense and improved the BP, as time permitted. e. Planned for indirect fire in the engagement area and along the possible avenue of approach, in front of and behind the obstacles. The smoke was planned by the fire-support team (FIST). <p>*12. The company or team commander develops a company or team fire plan. The company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Developed a fire plan as part of a hasty or deliberate BP occupation. b. Located the platoons and oriented the company or team. c. Developed a fire plan that included the company or the team's sector, the platoon and OP's positions, obstacles, indirect-fire targets, and final protection fire (FPF), if allocated. d. Ensured that the platoon's fire plans were received in a timely manner. Made an updated copy of the company or team's fire plan for the XO and the platoon leaders (as time permitted). e. Verified, based on METT-TC, the plan by conducting rehearsals for counterattack missions. f. Upgraded the fire plan, to include the fire plans for platoon supplementary firing positions. g. Forwarded a copy of the fire plan to the higher headquarters. <p>NOTE: Check the complete direct and indirect fire plan as if you are the enemy attacking the position. Look for weak points in the defense and make corrections.</p> <p>*13. The company or team commander and the platoon leaders organize the engagement area. The company or team commander and platoon leaders--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reconnoitered the engagement area (physically), covering as many options as possible to mass fire. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) The enemy's avenue of approach. (2) The locations of the existing and reinforcing obstacles. (3) The key terrain. (4) The TRPs. (5) The artillery preplots. b. Organized the engagement area to mass direct and indirect fire. The obstacles were tied into terrain and hidden to slow the forward velocity of the enemy regiment. c. Organized fire in the engagement area, 800 to 2,000 meters from the defending company or team, based on the METT-TC. The fire covered the obstacles so that the breaching vehicles were engaged. d. Used fire to interlock. The platoons and the company or team mutually supported each other with direct fire. e. Positioned the company or team around the engagement area. One company or platoon was centered in the engagement areas and one was positioned on both the right and the left flank. f. Ensured that the TRPs were marked for easy reference. Used the existing terrain, when possible. g. Shifted the platoons or the firing positions to cover the dead space and the weak points. h. Developed an obstacle plan that-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Tied obstacles into the existing terrain features. (2) Slowed the enemy movement. (3) Concealed obstacles from the enemy. (4) Included mine-fighting positions that the enemy could have used to his advantage or destroyed. (5) Positioned obstacles on the enemy's main avenue(s) of approach. (6) Covered obstacles by directing artillery to the front and rear of them. (7) Placed obstacles in the engagement area so that the personnel in the rear and on the flanks could fire simultaneously into the front of the enemy regiment, using direct and indirect massed fire. Repositioned the personnel stopped in front of the obstacles. <p>*14. The company or team commander is briefed, by the platoon leaders, on the engagement area(s) in each sector and any changes made to the origin.</p> <p>*15. The company or team commander executes the company defensive mission. The company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Acknowledged the report or mission from the battalion TF commander. b. Analyzed the spot report (SPOTREP) or mission using the METT-TC to determine the-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Size of the enemy force. (2) Location of the force in relation to the company or team's position. (3) Direction of enemy movement. (4) Avenue(s) of approach that the enemy could use to enter the company or team's sector or the battalion TF's engagement area. (5) Enemy's arrival time at the company or team's trigger point. c. Alerted the OPs with a SPOTREP, which included all of the information given by the battalion TF commander and any additional information. d. Directed the company or team to remain in hidden positions until the OP identified the source of the smoke dust columns or the sounds. e. Ordered the company or team and the platoons to immediately prepare to engage the enemy. f. Received SPOTREPs from the platoon leaders. g. Reported to the battalion TF commander. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Controlled the indirect fire on the enemy as they advanced.</p> <p>NOTE: This step may also be performed by the FIST.</p> <p>i. Ordered the platoons into hull-down positions, gave the order to fire, and returned the platoons to the hull-down position after the enemy was destroyed.</p> <p>*16. If the enemy elements are too strong, the company or team commander receives SPOTREPs from the platoon leaders containing the number and types of vehicles that reached the company or team breaking point. The SPOTREP may also contain orders from the battalion TF commander to displace to a subsequent BP. The company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requested FPF, if scheduled. b. Took direction from the battalion TF commander on whether to continue the mission or displace. If the battalion TF gave no guidance, the company commander or team commander coordinated with the flank company or teams and displaced. <p>NOTE: The company or team commander must coordinate with the flank company or teams so they are not flanked by the enemy.</p> <p>17. The company or team commander receives a FRAGO from the TF commander ordering a counterattack. The company or team--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted prep-to-fire checks. b. Checked the weapon systems for proper loading. <p>*18. The company or team commander coordinates with the platoon leaders reference continuing the mission.</p> <p>*19. The company or team commander monitors the mission. The company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the size, the type, and the location of the enemy elements. b. Identified the locations of the enemy or friendly mines and obstacles. c. Determined the most covered and concealed routes for the company or team to assault the flanks of the enemy without masking the fire of supporting elements. <p>*20. The counterattack company or team commander coordinates the counterattack route with the defending company or teams (if deviating from the OPORD route).</p> <p>*21. The defending company or team commanders alert their platoons that the counterattacking force is going to attack the enemy from the right or the left flank or from the rear.</p> <p>*22. The defending company or team commanders remind their defending platoon leaders of the restrictive-fire line (RFL) and to control the direct fire.</p> <p>23. The counterattacking company or team stays outside of or on the far side of the RFL.</p> <p>*24. Upon receiving the order to counterattack, the company or team commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ordered the company or team to begin the counterattack along the identified routes. b. Ordered the company or team to a position from which it could engage the enemy's flank or rear (for counterattack by fire). c. Ordered the company or team to move rapidly to the flank or the rear position of the enemy's trail battalions and close in on them, firing at high speed (for counterattack by fire and maneuver). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) The tanks, if available, led and destroyed the enemy tanks. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) The armored personnel carriers (APCs) followed and destroyed the light vehicles and the dismounted infantry. (3) The defending company or team commanders controlled fire behind the RFL. d. The defending companies of the battalion TF continued to fire upon the enemy and halted the enemy elements advancing from the front. 25. The company or team conducts consolidation and reorganization activities to continue the mission. *26. The company or team commander reports to the higher headquarters according to the field standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Secure at a Halt (05-3-1232)
(FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is moving while mounted when the unit leader orders a halt. Digital units have functional digital systems. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Within one minute, vehicle commanders move their vehicles into a herringbone or a coil formation, using available cover and concealment. Digitally capable units report to higher locations using Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) and Maneuver Control System (MCS). The unit is not surprised by the enemy. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader gives the signal to halt the unit. The unit halts in a-- a. Herringbone formation (temporary halt during a tactical road march or movement in a column formation). b. Coil formation (prolonged halt or when 360 degree security is necessary). NOTE: The unit leader ensures that each vehicle commander positions his vehicle using available cover and concealment as part of the selected formation within 1 minute.</p> <p>* 2. The vehicle commander ensures that security is maintained by either keeping the element mounted or dismounting all or part of the element based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). a. Ensured that element members, including air guards, continued to observe designated sectors. b. Ensured that members man and direct crew-served weapons toward assigned sectors. c. Ensured that the dismounted element members assumed hasty fighting positions.</p> <p>3. The vehicle commanders take appropriate action at the halt. a. Maintained visual, digital, or radio communication with the unit leader. b. Conducted during-operation maintenance according to the applicable technical manual (TM) as time permitted. c. Refueled the vehicles and resupplied needed supplies, if necessary.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK:** Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat-service-support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.**TASK:** Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.**STANDARD:** Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A)
 (FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7J)
 (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is moving, halted, or occupying a defensive position. Any member of the platoon gives the alert INCOMING or a round impacts on or near their location. Digital units have performed functionality checks of all digital systems. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Within two seconds of the alert, the leader designates the direction and the distance to move. The platoon moves to the specified location. Digital units having advanced digital capability, report the units new location (analog or digitally) as required by the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving mounted. 2. The element leader gives the direction and the distance for the unit to move; for example, 3 o'clock, 200 meters. 3. The vehicle commanders repeat the INCOMING to squad personnel. 4. The element personnel close all hatches. * 5. The element drivers move rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the leader. 6. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving dismounted. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that if vehicles with mounted weapons were available, the vehicle-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Halted as closely as possible to the dismounted team, allowing personnel to mount. (2) Moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the squad leader. b. Ensured that if vehicles were not available, dismounted personnel, keeping low, ran out of the impact area in the direction and at the distance ordered by the squad leader. 7. The element reacts to indirect fire when in a defensive position. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moved the vehicles immediately out of the impact area to alternate positions. b. Protected personnel by having each one go under the overhead cover of their fighting positions, if dismounted. 8. The element's members move to designated rally points according to the element's operation order (OPORD). 9. The element establishes immediate security at the designated rally point. 10. The element consolidates and reorganizes. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
11. The element leader submits a shelling report (SHELREP) or a mortar bombing report (MORTREP). Digital units having enhanced reporting capability report using digital capability.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Disrupt Enemy Movement and Operations using Persistent and Nonpersistent Chemical Weapons (5-OPFOR-0015)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and/or dense wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Perform Passage of Lines (07-2-0333.05-T01A)

(FM 7-10)

(FM 21-60)

(FM 24-19)

(FM 24-35)

(FM 24-35-1)

(FM 7-7)

(FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is required to conduct a passage of lines. The element is operating as a separate unit. The enemy can attack with indirect fire, aircraft, or company-size mounted or dismounted forces. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company moves all personnel and equipment through the stationary unit no later than the time specified in the order. The unit's main body is not surprised by the enemy during the departure from friendly lines. The unit sustains no casualties from friendly fire. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The element leader receives the operation order (OPORD). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initiated planning for the operation. b. Conducted coordination for the operation. * 2. The passing element leader meets with the stationary element leader. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Arranged for a specific time. b. Determined the meeting location. * 3. The passing element leader or his authorized representative coordinates the passage through and the reentry of lines with the forward element leader or his authorized representative. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that personnel from both elements were aware of each element's identification. b. Kept the stationary element leader informed of the size of the passing element. c. Coordinated the times of departure and return. d. Defined the area of operations (AO). * 4. The passing leader or his authorized representative coordinates with the stationary leader. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Exchanged enemy intelligence information. b. Completed a joint reconnaissance of the position. c. Explained the passing element's scheme of maneuver. d. Coordinated recognition signals for the passage, both near and far. e. Planned for guides and passage control measures. f. Coordinated security measures for the passage. g. Designated fire-support (FS) responsibilities and fire plans. h. Exchanged information on the terrain and the existing obstacles. i. Determined when and where the battle handover occurs. j. Coordinated combat-service support (CSS) for the items left on the position. * 5. Both leaders coordinate specific control measures for the passage. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Planned the locations of the contact points. b. Pointed the locations of the passage points. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Identified release points (RPs) and the battle handover line.</p> <p>d. Exchanged call signs, frequencies, code words, signals, and challenge and passwords.</p> <p>* 6. Both leaders perform a leader reconnaissance of the passage area.</p> <p>a. Located the passage-of-lines points.</p> <p>b. Identified the obstacle locations and safety lines.</p> <p>c. Pointed out the RPs.</p> <p>d. Reconnoitered the assembly area (AA) for the rearward passage.</p> <p>e. Identified the contact points.</p> <p>f. Walked the stationary element positions.</p> <p>g. Identified combat support (CS) and CSS elements (command posts [CPs], observation posts [OPs], and antiarmor and mortar positions).</p> <p>h. Ensured that the leader's reconnaissance and other activities did not reveal the operation to the enemy.</p> <p>* 7. The passing leader checks with other leaders who will be operating in the same or adjacent areas.</p> <p>a. Exchanged intelligence information on the enemy.</p> <p>b. Exchanged terrain data.</p> <p>8. The passing element arrives in the stationary element area.</p> <p>a. Moved into a secure position as designated in the primary coordination meeting with the stationary leader.</p> <p>b. Started final preparations for the passage of lines.</p> <p>9. The passing element leader issues a contingency plan before moving out to make final coordination.</p> <p>a. Briefed the element on what was happening and what was going to happen.</p> <p>b. Confirmed the chain of command.</p> <p>c. Prescribed actions to be taken on contact.</p> <p>d. Briefed actions to be taken in the absence of the leader.</p> <p>e. Provided a time schedule, a suspense list, and any limits on actions.</p> <p>*10. The passing element leader completes coordination with the stationary element leader.</p> <p>a. Confirmed recognition signals for the passage, both near and far.</p> <p>b. Coordinated with the guides.</p> <p>c. Confirmed traffic-control measures.</p> <p>d. Confirmed security measures for the passage.</p> <p>e. Collocated both leaders to observe critical areas, make timely decisions, and facilitate battle handover.</p> <p>11. The passing element moves to a position near the point of contact.</p> <p>a. Moved at the designated time.</p> <p>b. Provided cover and concealment during movement and at the position near the point of contact.</p> <p>12. The passing element's security team passes through the passage lanes.</p> <p>a. Linked up with the guides from the stationary element.</p> <p>b. Moved with the guides from the contact points through the passage lanes and passage points to the RPs.</p> <p>c. Cleared the area forward of the RPs to the first covered and concealed position.</p> <p>d. Reported when the area was secure.</p> <p>13. The remainder of the passage element moves through the passage lanes.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Moved forward to the RPs. b. Identified and accounted for passage personnel (as confirmed by the guides) as the element passed through the RP. c. Ensured that movement was continuous throughout the passage. d. Executed a security halt after the company had moved beyond the friendly element's final protective fires (FPF). e. Executed the movement of the executive officer (XO), the first sergeant (1SG), and the platoon sergeant (PSG) from the RP forward, only after the leader was sure that he did not have to withdraw through the passage point.</p> <p>14. The passing element makes a reentry through the friendly lines. a. Halted the element and established the reentry rally point. NOTE to the National Guard (NG): If in contact with the enemy, the element does not halt. The contact party or guides from the stationary element lead the element through the passage points, or long-range signals are used. b. Contacted the forward element by radio and told them, by the use of a prearranged code word, that the element was ready to reenter. (The leader may opt to keep the element outside of friendly lines until daybreak.) c. Acknowledged receipt of the message.</p> <p>15. The forward element directs a security team on an azimuth and distance to the contact point. a. Established contact with the stationary element guides using far- and near-recognition signals. b. Signaled the element forward or went back and led the element to the passage point. c. Counted and identified each element as it passed through the passage point (1SG or XO and PSG).</p> <p>16. The element, led by a guide from the stationary element, moves through the passage point and to the AA behind the friendly element. The leader-- a. Ensured that casualties were treated and evacuated upon arrival at the AA. b. Reported to the stationary element CP; provided tactical information concerning the area of responsibility.</p> <p>17. The passing leader links up with his element in the AA. a. Prepared the element for movement to a secure area. b. Led the element to a secure area. c. Conducted the debriefing.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-326-5775	COORDINATE WITH AN ADJACENT PLATOON	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-329-1006	NAVIGATE FROM ONE POINT ON THE GROUND TO ANOTHER POINT WHILE DISMOUNTED	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0820	ANALYZE TERRAIN	STP 21-24-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A)

(FM 7-10)

(FM 24-19)

(FM 24-35)

(FM 24-35-1)

(FM 7-7)

(FM 7-8)

(TC 24-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element has been given the order to move and occupy an AA in preparation for combat operations. The enemy has the capability to attack with indirect fire, combined-arms support, and platoon-size elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The quartering party completes AA preparations and guides the element's main body into its respective positions no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Movement into the AA is uninterrupted; elements are not held up outside the AA. The enemy does not surprise the element's main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The element leader organizes a quartering party. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected the quartering party personnel. b. Determined the requirement for a combat vehicle and crew, based on transportation and security requirements. c. Determined the essential equipment needed. * 2. The element leader briefs the quartering party. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the location of the AA. b. Gave specific instructions upon arrival at the AA. c. Relayed the time of the main body's arrival at the AA. d. Identified the order of march. e. Relayed the nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) conditions. f. Issued a contingency plan in case of enemy contact. g. Established the MOPP level. 3. The element quartering party moves along the route of march. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained security. b. Reconnoitered the route of march from the start point (SP) to the release point (RP) using the digital situational awareness (SA) overlay on Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS). c. Monitored for NBC contamination. d. Marked the obstacles and bypass routes. e. Reported critical information to the element quartering party leader. 4. The quartering party moves into the element AA and prepares the area for the element's arrival. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected and marked the routes from the RP to the new location. b. Selected and posted the guides in time to meet the main body. c. Marked the entrances, exits, and internal routes. d. Marked the vehicle positions where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provided 360-degree security. e. Marked or removed the mines and obstacles. f. Organized and posted local security. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. The element occupies the AA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moved the quartering party guides (waiting in covered and concealed positions) to selected or designated areas without halting. b. Established and maintained local security from air and ground forces. <p>6. The element establishes the AA's perimeter.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established the priority of work, which may vary by the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). b. Positioned the vehicles and crew-served weapons to cover the sectors of fire. c. Established the observation posts (OPs) on the critical avenues of approach. d. Established digital and frequency modulated (FM) communications between all positions. Used wire communications, if the time and situation permitted. e. Prepared the range cards. f. Constructed individual and crew-served fighting positions. g. Cleared the fields of fire. h. Camouflaged the positions. i. Emplaced the chemical-agent alarms and the early-warning devices. <p>7. The element performs internal operation of the AA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the vehicles and equipment. b. Distributed the ammunition, rations, water, supplies, and special equipment. c. Established the personal-hygiene and field-sanitation sites. d. Maintained noise, light, and camouflage discipline. e. Instituted the rest plan for element members and leaders. f. Inspected the AA. <p>* 8. The element leader coordinates with the element on the left and the right as a minimum.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established the responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent elements. b. Exchanged information on the OP locations and the element's signals. c. Coordinated local counterattacks. d. Developed a defensive plan and forwarded it to higher headquarters (HQ). <p>9. The leaders develop contingency plans.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Developed an evacuation plan. b. Developed a plan of action on enemy contact. <p>10. The unit conducts rehearsals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Rehearsed the evacuation plan. b. Rehearsed the plan of action on enemy contact. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE	STP 21-24-SMCT
04-3302.01-0003	Conduct a Reconnaissance	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3306.01-0007	Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
071-326-0503	MOVE OVER, THROUGH, OR AROUND OBSTACLES (EXCEPT MINEFIELDS)	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-0513	SELECT TEMPORARY FIGHTING POSITIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5703	CONSTRUCT INDIVIDUAL FIGHTING POSITIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-5704	SUPERVISE CONSTRUCTION OF A FIGHTING POSITION	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5775	COORDINATE WITH AN ADJACENT PLATOON	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-329-1006	NAVIGATE FROM ONE POINT ON THE GROUND TO ANOTHER POINT WHILE DISMOUNTED	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0852	CLEAR A FIELD OF FIRE	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A)
 (FM 55-30) (FM 21-16)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An operation order (OPORD) requires the element to move and conduct operations at a new location. The OPOrd provides the new location that the element must move to. There is a possibility of enemy contact with threat patrols up to platoon and company size. Digital units have completed a functionality check of digital systems and they are operational. Threat-mounted forces have been operating in the area through which the route passes. The company's standing operating procedure (SOP) is available and contains movement readiness levels and current loading plans. The convoy may be conducted during daylight or darkness, including blackout conditions. Radio and visual signals will be used for convoy control. The column may conduct halts. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element conducts the convoy and arrives at its new location by the time specified in the OPOrd. Orders, overlays and locations can be sent via digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The company commander conducts a map reconnaissance using all available position/navigation (POS/NAV) and terrain analysis capabilities, to include space-based assets. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Indicated the start point (SP). b. Identified the locations of friendly units. c. Pointed out the potential ambush sites. d. Identified the checkpoints. e. Pointed out the sites to be used for scheduled halts. f. Indicated the release point (RP). 2. The reconnaissance party conducts a route reconnaissance using all available POS/NAV and mapping capabilities available. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Wore the designated MOPP gear. b. Activated the automatic chemical alarm. c. Monitored radiation-monitoring devices. d. Verified the map information. e. Listed the capacities of bridges and underpasses. f. Listed the locations of culverts, ferries, fording areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites. g. Prepared the map overlay. h. Computed the travel time. i. Prepared the strip map. * 3. The convoy commander coordinates with higher headquarters (HQ) for the following required support: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Military Police (MP). b. Medical. c. Fire support (FS). d. Engineer. e. Maintenance contact team. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Additional requirements, as required.</p> <p>4. The company prepares the vehicles and the equipment.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS). b. Corrected minor deficiencies. c. Reported major deficiencies. d. Hardened the vehicles using sandbags or other authorized materials. e. Covered unit identification markings on the vehicles and personnel. f. Covered or removed the reflective surfaces. g. Placed the antennas at their lowest height. h. Turned radio volumes and squelches to their lowest setting, consistent with operational requirements. <p>* 5. The convoy commander organizes the convoy.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assigned cargo-vehicle positions. b. Positioned the control vehicles without setting a pattern. c. Assigned the recovery vehicles position. d. Arranged the hardened vehicles near the head of the convoy. e. Specified passenger locations. f. Appointed air guards. g. Organized the trail party element. h. Provided vehicle-position listings to the trail party leader. <p>* 6. The convoy commander briefs the convoy personnel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided strip maps to each vehicle driver. b. Identified the convoy chain of command. c. Detailed the convoy route. d. Prescribed the rate-of-march speed and the catch-up speed. e. Specified convoy intervals. f. Identified the scheduled halts. g. Briefed the accident and breakdown procedures. h. Briefed the immediate-action security measures. i. Briefed the blackout-condition procedures. j. Specified the location of medical support. k. Specified the location of maintenance support. l. Briefed the communication procedures. m. Specified the location and identification of the destination. <p>7. The convoy crosses the SP.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Crossed at the specified time. b. Verified that the vehicles crossed the SP. c. Forwarded the SP-crossing report to the convoy commander when the entire unit had passed the SP. <p>* 8. The convoy commander provides the convoy information to higher HQ.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reported the SP-crossing time. b. Reported the checkpoints clearance, when crossed. c. Pointed out the data that conflicted with maps. d. Employed the correct signal operation instruction (SOI) codes in all transmissions. e. Reported the RP-crossing time. <p>9. The convoy maintains march discipline.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained the designated march speed. b. Maintained proper vehicle intervals. c. Crossed checkpoints as scheduled. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Reacted correctly to the convoy commander's signals. e. Maintained security throughout the movement and during halts.</p> <p>10. The company conducts a scheduled halt. a. Stopped the column at the prescribed time. b. Maintained the prescribed vehicular intervals. c. Moved the vehicles off the road. d. Established local security. e. Performed PMCS. f. Inspected vehicle loads. g. Departed at the specified times.</p> <p>11. The company conducts an unscheduled halt. a. Alerted the march column. b. Reported the stoppage to higher HQ. c. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals. d. Established local security. e. Reported resumption of the march to higher HQ.</p> <p>12. The convoy moves under blackout conditions. a. Provided a visual adjustment period. b. Prepared the vehicles for blackout conditions. c. Maintained the prescribed vehicle distances. d. Wore night-vision goggles (specified personnel). e. Wore regular eye-protection goggles. f. Employed ground guides during poor visibility periods.</p> <p>13. The trail party recovers disabled vehicles. a. Inspected the disabled vehicles. b. Repaired disabled vehicles, when possible. c. Towed the vehicles. d. Reported vehicle status to the convoy commander.</p> <p>14. The convoy moves through urban areas. a. Identified weight, height, and width restrictions. b. Employed close-column formation. c. Obeyed traffic-control directions. d. Employed direction guides at critical intersections.</p> <p>15. The convoy crosses the RP. a. Crossed at the specified time. b. Verified that the vehicles had crossed the RP. c. Forwarded the crossing report to higher HQ.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

ARTEP 5-425-66-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Establish Unit Defense (07-3-0219.05-T01A)

(FM 7-8)

(FM 24-19)

(FM 24-35)

(FM 24-35-1)

(FM 7-7)

(TC 24-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) with a mission to occupy part of a larger unit's defensive sector, or is isolated and must provide its own security or defense. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. The element may be opposed by as much as a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element completes all preparations for the defense not later than the time specified in the order. Digital units will report their location using the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System, or frequency modulated (FM) to provide a friendly unit template and locations. The enemy does not surprise the platoon. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The platoon leader performs a leader's reconnaissance of the tentative defensive position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Searched the area to ensure that it was free of the enemy, mines, and booby traps. b. Established local security. c. Surveyed the area for nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) contamination. d. Designated sectors and general locations for the operations, vehicles, and automatic and antiarmor weapons, based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). <p>NOTE: At night, the designation of positions must be more exact. Leaders may elect to reconnoiter the area first, position the observation posts (OPs), and then have the guides bring the other members into position.</p> <p>2. The designated security or operation team moves to assigned positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Emplaced the M8A1 chemical alarm system, if assigned, within 5 minutes of occupying the OP. b. Positioned the OP within range of the supporting small-arms fire. c. Provided cover and concealment for the OP personnel. d. Designated the covered and concealed routes to and from the OP. e. Established communications from the operations to the unit's command post (CP). The primary means should be wire, supplemented by messenger and radio. f. Disseminated the locations of all friendly personnel in the sector. <p>3. The platoon leader and the platoon forward observer (FO) designate targets to support the OP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the target reference points (TRPs). b. Included the OP targets within the fire plan. <p>4. The OP team provides early warning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided continuous early warning out to a range that warned of enemy observation, direct fire, or assault on the main body. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Detected all enemy activity within the vicinity of the unit's position. c. Adjusted illumination or high-explosive (HE) rounds on enemy targets. d. Emplaced expedient early-warning devices before dark, if possible. e. Demonstrated the correct use of the current challenge and password. f. Alternated the OP sites when required, due to the changing visibility or enemy activity. <p>* 5. The platoon leader designates the primary, alternate, and supplementary fighting positions for key weapons or vehicles, where applicable, while emplacing the rest of the platoon.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Positioned the machine guns to obtain grazing fire along the most likely dismounted avenue of approach (AA). b. Positioned the antiarmor weapons to cover the likely armor AA or the assigned engagement area (EA). c. Ensured that the positions were mutually supported along armor and dismounted infantry AAs. d. Positioned the M203 grenade launchers, if assigned, to cover dead space in the terrain outside the hand-grenade range. <p>* 6. The leaders place fighting positions to engage targets in designated sectors of fire, covering the most dangerous AAs first.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the sector of fire based on the type of weapon and the weapon's range. b. Assigned all personnel to a fighting position. <p>* 7. The platoon leader coordinates or contacts adjacent units.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established boundary responsibilities. b. Discovered and eliminated any gaps in the defensive sector. c. Ensured that the observation and fires overlapped. <p>8. The platoon occupies defensive positions.</p> <p>NOTE: The leader establishes task priorities. Normally these are in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP), but can be modified as needed (based on METT-TC considerations) by the platoon leader or the company commander.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Occupied the assigned positions, physically. b. Reconnoitered physically in front of each position to become familiar with the terrain, to locate dead space, and to view the terrain from the enemy's perspective. c. Prepared and forwarded the crew-served weapons range cards to the squad leader within 15 minutes of positioning. d. Installed the aiming stakes. e. Cleared the fields of fire. f. Emplaced the obstacles according to the company's obstacle plan. g. Dug fighting positions to armpit depth with 18 inches of parapet. h. Constructed overhead cover for the fighting position. i. Camouflaged the positions and vehicles from aerial and ground observation. Ensured that the fighting positions could not be detected from a distance of more than 35 meters from the front of the position. j. Stockpiled ammunition, food, and water. k. Constructed alternate and supplementary positions. l. Ensured that all platoon members knew the platoon CP location. <p>* 9. The platoon leader with the fire-support team (FIST) or FO, if applicable, plans for the employment of indirect fires.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Planned the fires along the enemy AAs. b. Planned the fires at known or likely enemy positions. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Planned the final protective fires (FPF), if allocated. d. Registered and adjusted the TRPs, if available and the situation permitted.</p> <p>10. The radiotelephone operator (RATELO) establishes communications. a. Used wire as the primary communications, if available. b. Ensured that the platoon or company CP had communications with operations, higher and subordinate leaders, adjacent units, and fire support. c. Conducted periodic communications checks to ensure that all communications were operational. d. Planned and provided for an alternate means of communications.</p> <p>*11. The squad leader prepares a sector sketch. a. Identified the main terrain features and the range to them. b. Identified the location of the squad's fighting positions. c. Indicated the primary and secondary sectors of fire for each position. d. Identified the type of weapon and fire-control measures (FPF, principle direction of fire [PDF], and final protective line [FPL]) for each position. e. Identified the squad leader's position and the location of the OPs. f. Marked dead space on the sketch. g. Identified the location of the obstacles. h. Indicated the direction of north. i. Forwarded a copy of the sector sketch to the platoon leader within 30 minutes of being assigned a sector.</p> <p>*12. The platoon leader prepares a platoon-sector sketch. a. Indicated the platoon sector or the EA. b. Denoted the primary, alternate, and supplementary squad positions and the sectors of fire. c. Indicated the location of the vehicles, antiarmor and automatic weapons' positions with the primary sectors of fire, the FPL or the PDF for the primary vehicle weapons system, automatic weapons, and the TRPs. d. Identified the location of the OPs and the patrol routes, if any had been planned. e. Outlined the maximum engagement lines for the primary weapon systems. f. Identified the location of indirect-fire targets and FPFs, if any had been allocated. g. Indicated the direction of north. h. Illustrated the unit identification, up to the company level. i. Indicated the date-time group. j. Identified the position of the platoon CP. k. Forwarded a copy of the platoon-sector sketch to the company commander within 1 hour of assigning squad leaders sectors.</p> <p>13. The platoon continues to improve defensive positions. a. Improved according to the SOP work priorities. b. Upgraded as directed by higher headquarters (HQ).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-5710.00-0001	Place a Telephone Set, TA-312/PT or TA-1/PT, into Operation	STP 21-II-MQS
04-1910.11-1001	Camouflage Self, Individual Equipment, and Position	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
04-3301.01-0013	Defend a Squad/Platoon Position	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
04-3302.01-0003	Conduct a Reconnaissance	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
061-283-6003	ADJUST INDIRECT FIRE	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-325-4407	EMPLOY HAND GRENADES	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-325-4425	EMPLOY AN M18A1 CLAYMORE MINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-5703	CONSTRUCT INDIVIDUAL FIGHTING POSITIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-5704	SUPERVISE CONSTRUCTION OF A FIGHTING POSITION	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0804	PERFORM SURVEILLANCE WITHOUT THE AID OF ELECTRONIC DEVICES	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0852	CLEAR A FIELD OF FIRE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-430-0002	CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A SQUAD	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A)
(FM 7-10) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is ordered to conduct a tactical road march. The enemy (no larger than a squad or platoon size) can assault mounted or dismounted, employ indirect fires, or employ air support. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the start point (SP), follows the prescribed route without deviation (unless required otherwise by enemy action or at the direction of higher headquarters [HQ]) and crosses the release point (RP), all as specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader issues a warning order (WO) to subordinate leaders.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Included enough information for subordinate elements to prepare for the mission. b. Gave the WO immediately after being alerted for the mission. c. Included movement instructions if the movement was to be initiated before the operation order (OPORD) was issued. d. Addressed items not covered in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). e. Specified the time and location to issue the OPORD. <p>* 2. The element leader completes the plan and issues the march order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided a statement of the enemy situation, weather, and visibility conditions. b. Identified the route, SP, RP, critical points, and other control points. c. Provided the organization for movement, the order of march, the march rate, and the distance to maintain between units. d. Established security tasks for subordinate elements, to include all-around security and air-guard coverage for the entire element. e. Addressed contingencies for actions on enemy contact. <p>NOTE: Plans must include the reaction to an enemy ambush; indirect fire; air attack; nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) attack; and sniper fires.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. Provided the soldiers with load guides. g. Ensured that subordinate leaders briefed their plans. <p>3. The element conducts the necessary resupply of water, rations, ammunition, batteries, and special-issue items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected the personnel and vehicles for the proper load and equipment and their readiness to move. b. Completed a communications check using digital and frequency modulated (FM) radios to report the element's readiness to move. <p>4. The element conducts the road movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Crossed the SP at the designated time. b. Maintained personnel and vehicle intervals and the rate of march specified in the order or the unit's SOP. c. Followed the prescribed route. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. The element maintains local security throughout the movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained all-around observation at all times, to include air guards. b. Oriented as directed, to establish local security. <p>6. The unit reports and reacts to enemy contact.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reported and reacted according to directions in the OPORD using the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS). b. Reported and reacted according to the unit's SOP using the DRS. <p>7. The unit halts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted the halt at regular intervals according to the unit's SOP (as the tactical situation permitted) to rest the troops, adjust and redistribute the equipment, and perform foot hygiene. b. Positioned the element to provide all-around security. c. Reported all halts to the next higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the Mobile Subscriber Radiotelephone Terminal (MSRT). d. Positioned the vehicles in a herringbone formation. e. Dismounted personnel to provide local security. f. Checked the condition of the personnel and equipment. g. Coordinated with adjacent unit. h. Reported status to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT. <p>8. The leader controls the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used visual, messenger, digital, or radio signals for control throughout the movement. b. Reported control measures as directed by the SOP or the order using the DRS. c. Used control measures from the order, modified as needed. <p>9. The element arrives at the RP at the time specified in the order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Met the quartering-party guide, if one was designated. b. Passed through the RP without halting. c. Reported the crossing to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-0401.20-0001	Direct Unit Air Defense	STP 21-II-MQS
		STP 21-I-MQS
01-7200.75-0100	Conduct Convoy Operations	STP 21-II-MQS
		STP 21-I-MQS
01-7300.75-0500	Plan Convoy Operations	STP 21-II-MQS
		STP 21-I-MQS

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
03-4966.90-0010	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services	STP 21-II-MQS
04-3303.02-0014	Prepare Platoon or Company Combat Orders	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
04-3303.02-0037	Navigate While Mounted	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
04-3303.02-0039	Plan and Execute a Route Fire Support	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
071-329-1000	IDENTIFY TOPOGRAPHIC SYMBOLS ON A MILITARY MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1001	IDENTIFY TERRAIN FEATURES ON A MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1003	DETERMINE A MAGNETIC AZIMUTH USING A LENSATIC COMPASS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1005	DETERMINE A LOCATION ON THE GROUND BY TERRAIN ASSOCIATION	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1008	MEASURE DISTANCE ON A MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1012	ORIENT A MAP TO THE GROUND BY MAP TERRAIN ASSOCIATION	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1018	DETERMINE DIRECTION WITHOUT A COMPASS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0804	PERFORM SURVEILLANCE WITHOUT THE AID OF ELECTRONIC DEVICES	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT
301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE	STP 21-1-SMCT
551-721-1359	DRIVE VEHICLE IN A CONVOY	STP 21-1-SMCT
551-721-1363	DRIVE VEHICLE WITH OR WITHOUT TRAILER/SEMITRAILER IN BLACKOUT CONDITIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
551-721-1408	IMPLEMENT DEFENSIVE PROCEDURES WHEN UNDER ENEMY ATTACK OR AMBUSH IN A TRUCK CONVOY	STP 21-1-SMCT
04-3303.02-0040	Navigate with a Compass and Map	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A)
 (FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7J)
 (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is required to move cross-country mounted or dismounted. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. The threat may consist of up to a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element arrives at its destination without being surprised by the opposing forces (OPFOR). The platoon retains its ability to move. Digital units send orders / reports and text messages as required, in accordance with (IAW) the unit tactical standard operating procedures (TACSOP) using frequency modulated (FM) or by digital means.. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The platoon leader assigns areas of responsibility during the movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assigned all squads to an area of responsibility. b. Directed squad leaders to assign individual areas of responsibility. c. Ensured that there was all-round coverage of the platoon, including air guard. * 2. The platoon leader designates a route for the movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that there was concealment from ground, air, and space observation. b. Ensured that there was cover from the direct fire of known enemy positions. 3. The squads use a wedge formation during the movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Formed one or two wedges, based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). b. Closed the wedges during limited visibility so that visibility was maintained between individuals, teams, and squads. The rate of movement was maintained. c. Opened the wedges as obstructions to the movement and to diminish control. * 4. The platoon leader designates the movement technique to be used, based on METT-TC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designated the traveling movement technique when enemy contact was not likely. b. Designated the traveling-overwatch movement technique when enemy contact was possible. c. Designated the bounding-overwatch movement technique when enemy contact was likely. 5. The platoon performs the traveling movement technique. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained fire teams about 20 meters apart when dismounted. b. Moved the squads on a column axis about 20 meters apart when dismounted. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Moved in a column formation, staggered laterally, with 50 to 100 meters between vehicles when mounted.</p> <p>d. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.</p> <p>6. The platoon performs the traveling-overwatch movement technique.</p> <p>a. Increased the distance between the lead squad and the platoon's main body by 50 to 100 meters.</p> <p>NOTE: (DISMOUNTED) The lead squad uses traveling overwatch and the trailing squads use traveling.</p> <p>b. Conducted the movement (mounted) with the lead vehicle 100 to 400 meters in front of the rest of the platoon; other vehicles were 50 to 100 meters apart.</p> <p>c. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.</p> <p>7. The platoon performs the bounding-overwatch movement technique.</p> <p>a. Conducted bounds that did not exceed visual overwatch.</p> <p>b. Conducted bounds that stayed within the maximum effective range of overwatching weapons.</p> <p>* 8. The bounding squad moves.</p> <p>a. Signaled to the platoon leader that it was beginning its movement.</p> <p>b. Used a covered and concealed route, when available, for its bound.</p> <p>c. Employed a point man or buddy team as far forward as visual contact with the rest of the squad allowed.</p> <p>d. Moved as quickly as possible while maintaining operation security (OPSEC).</p> <p>e. Moved so as not to mask the fires of the overwatching element.</p> <p>f. Established an overwatch position upon completion of its bound, to overwatch the succeeding bound.</p> <p>g. Informed the platoon leader that it had finished its bound and was ready to overwatch.</p> <p>h. Alerted the platoon leader and overwatching element of any enemy detected, obstacles encountered, or danger areas.</p> <p>9. The overwatch squad provides overwatch.</p> <p>a. Occupied a position that allowed observation and fire to cover the bounding squad's movement to its next overwatch position.</p> <p>b. Oriented the weapons on likely enemy positions.</p> <p>c. Maintained continuous observation of the bounding squad, its route, and any terrain that could influence the route.</p> <p>d. Suppressed enemy units so that the bounding element was not fixed.</p> <p>e. Alerted the bounding squad and the platoon leader of any enemy that it detected.</p> <p>f. Prepared to bound when the bounding team assumed the overwatch position.</p> <p>10. The platoon maintains security during the movement.</p> <p>a. Maintained visual contact at a normal interval of 10 meters (the interval automatically expands and contracts based on terrain and visibility).</p> <p>b. Maintained noise and light discipline.</p> <p>c. Observed sectors of fires so that no enemy could approach the platoon within 35 meters and no aircraft could attack the platoon without warning.</p> <p>*11. The leaders use control measures during the movement.</p> <p>a. Positioned themselves where they could control the movement.</p> <p>b. Positioned key weapons.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Used visual signals and oral commands to control the movement. 12. The platoon leader controls the platoon's movements. a. Assessed the terrain continuously for potential danger areas. b. Used arm and hand signals once contact was made. c. Used visual and audio signals once contact was made. 13. The platoon leader knows the platoon location at all times. a. Expressed the platoon's location as a six-digit coordinate or by using current operational graphics. b. Knew the location of all the platoon elements and the leading, flanking, and trailing company elements, and was accurate to plus or minus 100 meters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Prepare Personnel for Deployment (12-1-0409.05-T01A)
 (TC 12-16) (AR 220-10) (AR 600-38)
 (AR 600-8) (AR 600-8-14) (AR 600-8-2)
 (AR 600-8-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is tasked to deploy to a theater of operations. It is assigned the responsibility to process personnel for overseas movement. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Battalion soldiers are administratively prepared for deployment within the time frame specified in the operation order (OPORD) or letter of instruction (LOI).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) plans preparation for oversea movement (POM). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established processing requirements. b. Established support requirements. c. Published POM plan. d. Briefed command group. e. Coordinated POM with brigade S1. * 2. The S1 or Personnel and Administration Center (PAC) supervisor coordinates POM requirements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel), for personnel service company (PSC) support. b. Coordinated with Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) for legal support. c. Coordinated with medical department activity (MEDDAC) and dental activity (DENTAC) for medical and dental support. d. Coordinated with provost marshal (PM) for privately owned vehicle (POV) storage. 3. The S1 section participates in the POM process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted liaison with POM site commander. b. Briefed soldiers on POM procedures. c. Issued POM checklist. d. Reviewed family care plans. e. Reviewed pay elections. f. Assisted soldiers in completing postal forms. g. Reviewed POM checklist for completeness. h. Identified nonparticipants and nondeployable soldiers. * 4. The S1 or PAC supervisor conducts briefings for family members. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated installation support. b. Established briefing site and schedules. c. Published family-support packet. d. Monitored family-support briefings. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A)
(FM 3-19)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is conducting operations in an area where nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) weapons have been initiated. The commander needs to determine the presence of, or information on, radiological, chemical, or biological hazards in the area of operational concern. Digital units have performed functionality checks and all digital systems are functioning. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The commander and operations section plan a reconnaissance or survey mission for the company's organic reconnaissance element. The plan is issued with the two-thirds planning time remaining for the element. The plan must be detailed and feasible for the element to perform. If the situation and location permit, the commander supervises the preparation and execution. Digital units can send and receive reports, overlay graphics and text messaging information through digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The commander receives and analyses the mission and identifies all unit tasks. * 2. The commander issues a warning order as soon as possible to subordinate leaders. * 3. The commander and the operations section makes a tentative plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Planned reconnaissance or survey techniques, locations, turn-back dose rates (radiological missions), decontamination after the reconnaissance/survey, fire support, reporting procedures, logistical support, and leader and signal information. b. Coordinated for intelligence information, air or indirect fire support, and medical support and coordinated its plan with units in the area of operations if necessary. c. Drew, stocked, or coordinated petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); ammunition; MOPP gear; Classes II and VII support; and maintenance/recovery/Class IX support for the platoon. * 4. The commander orders units to start movement if necessary. * 5. The commander reconnoiters the operations area and makes a map reconnaissance as a minimum. * 6. The commander completes the plan and issues the operation order (OPORD) with two-thirds of the total planning time remaining for the platoon. * 7. The commander supervises preparations of the reconnaissance/survey if the location of operations permits. Communications, supply, and maintenance sections assist the platoons with priority maintenance and resupply support. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>8. The company conducts a tactical road march or executes traveling movement to the reconnaissance/survey site. The reconnaissance or survey element--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Executed a mounted movement technique (traveling, traveling overwatch, or bounding overwatch) or reconnoitered dismounted, as the situation and or mission requires. b. Detected and marked the contaminated area, ensuring that the marking signs were facing toward friendly areas. Detected uncontaminated areas and routes. Selected decontamination sites with a water source, cover and concealment, and physical capacity to hold a site if required to perform reconnaissance for decontamination sites as a mission. c. Determined the limits of the contaminated area. Detected the types of chemical agents or specific levels and types of radiological contamination as required by the mission. <p>9. The headquarters, if prescribed by the mission, assists the reconnaissance/survey units' recovery operations.</p> <p>*10. The commander or operations officer, if prescribed by the mission, debriefs returning reconnaissance/survey units and forwards acquired information to higher headquarters in NBC 4 or NBC 5 format if required.</p> <p>11. The radiological company leaders record, collate, and submit individual and unit radiation-exposure-status (RES) readings to higher headquarters.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Conduct a Thorough Decontamination Operation (03-2-C312.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-5) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: A unit is contaminated with a persistent chemical agent during combat operations. Time is available to conduct reconstitution, to include a thorough decontamination. A supporting smoke/decontamination (or decontamination) platoon is tasked to conduct the thorough decontamination mission. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The smoke/decontamination platoon sets up the detailed equipment decontamination site and removes all contamination from the equipment and vehicles. The contaminated unit sets up the detailed troop decontamination (with technical advice from the decontamination platoon) and processes all personnel. The responsible units properly close the site and report the location to higher headquarters (HQ).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The contaminated unit's leader determines the extent of the contamination and establishes decontamination priorities. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received input from subordinate leaders and/or staff. b. Established priorities of decontamination. 2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher HQ. The request should, as a minimum, include the-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designation of the contaminated unit. b. Location of the contaminated unit. c. Frequency and call sign of the contaminated unit. d. Time the unit became contaminated. e. Number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that were contaminated. f. Type of contamination. g. Earliest possible time the unit could move or begin decontamination. h. Special requirements (patient decontamination station, recovery assets, unit decontamination team, and so forth). 3. The contaminated unit's higher HQ chemical staff-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Issued a warning order to the supporting chemical unit. b. Coordinated the movement of the contaminated unit to the linkup point and the decontamination site. c. Coordinated with supporting elements (medical, engineer, air defense, military police, smoke support, and so forth). <p>NOTE: The contaminated unit is responsible for providing security for the decontamination site. Security support must be coordinated before arriving at the linkup point.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. The contaminated unit, decontamination platoon, and other supporting elements arrive at the linkup point. 5. The decontamination unit's leader briefs the site layout and the procedures. 6. The contaminated unit conducts predecontamination site or staging-area activities. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Segregated the contaminated vehicles and equipment from the uncontaminated ones, if possible.</p> <p>b. Dismounted the vehicles (except the drivers), ensuring that they--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Removed all equipment from the tops of the vehicles. (2) Did not reenter the vehicles once they were exited (to prevent further contamination of the interior of the vehicles). <p>c. Prepared vehicles for detailed equipment decontamination.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Used pioneer tools to remove all heavy mud and debris from the vehicle. (2) Removed and disposed of seat covers, canvas items, camouflage netting, and other materials which could absorb chemical contaminants. (3) Removed and disposed of nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) covers as contaminated waste. <p>d. Moved contaminated personnel and vehicles and equipment to the detailed troop and equipment decontamination lines.</p> <p>7. The designated personnel set up and maintain communications within the decontamination site and coordinate with the supported unit for additional communications support.</p> <p>* 8. The decontamination unit sets up detailed equipment decontamination-site stations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Station 1. Initial wash. b. Station 2. Decontamination solution #2 (DS2) application. c. Station 3. Wait/interior decontamination. d. Station 4. Rinse. e. Station 5. Check. <p>9. The contaminated unit sets up detailed troop decontamination site stations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Station 1. Individual gear decontamination. b. Station 2. Overboot and hood decontamination. c. Station 3. Overgarment removal. d. Station 4. Overboot and glove removal. e. Station 5. Monitor. f. Station 6. Mask removal. g. Station 7. Mask decontamination point. h. Station 8. Reissue point. <p>NOTE: The decontamination unit's leader must establish a route to move vehicle operators from Station 3 of the detailed equipment decontamination site to the detailed troop decontamination site.</p> <p>10. The decontamination unit's leader (in conjunction with the leader or control cell from the contaminated unit) supervises an overall thorough decontamination-site operation.</p> <p>11. The decontamination unit processes vehicles and equipment through the detailed equipment decontamination stations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the contaminated unit provided guides to control vehicle traffic through the site. b. Ensured that the drivers moved the vehicles and equipment through the stations. c. Ensured that the assistant drivers who had processed through the detailed troop decontamination stations replaced the primary drivers at Station 3, once interior decontamination was completed. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Ensured that the primary drivers proceeded to the detailed troop decontamination site to process through the stations.</p> <p>e. Ensured that the soldiers from the detailed troop decontamination site and the vehicles and equipment from the detailed equipment decontamination site reunited and moved to the reconstitution area.</p> <p>12. The contaminated unit processes personnel through the detailed troop decontamination stations.</p> <p>13. The decontamination unit's soldiers close the detailed equipment decontamination site.</p> <p>a. Station 1.</p> <p>(1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station (power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE], hoses, nozzles, and so forth).</p> <p>(2) Checked all equipment for contamination and decontaminated again, if necessary.</p> <p>(3) Drained water from the blivets or fabric tanks.</p> <p>(4) Loaded equipment on the vehicles.</p> <p>(5) Spread a can of super tropical bleach (STB) in each sump and covered the sumps.</p> <p>(6) Marked the sumps.</p> <p>b. Station 2 (for chemical/biological only).</p> <p>(1) Applied DS2 to PDDE, mops, handles, decontamination apparatus, and containers.</p> <p>(2) Discarded mop heads, brushes, and the station sign in the Station 4 sump and then pulled the PDDE forward and washed the entire application point.</p> <p>(3) Loaded unused decontaminants on the vehicles.</p> <p>(4) Marked the area and moved all reusable equipment from Station 2 to Station 3.</p> <p>c. Station 3.</p> <p>(1) Inspected unused supplies for contamination; if uncontaminated, loaded on the vehicles.</p> <p>(2) Threw contaminated supplies in the Station 4 sump.</p> <p>d. Station 4.</p> <p>(1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station (PDDE, hoses, nozzles, and so forth).</p> <p>(2) Checked all equipment for contamination and decontaminated again, if necessary.</p> <p>(3) Drained the water from the blivets or fabric tanks.</p> <p>(4) Loaded equipment on the vehicles.</p> <p>(5) Spread a can of STB in each sump and covered the sumps (after the residue from Station 5 was placed in the sump).</p> <p>(6) Marked the sumps.</p> <p>e. Station 5.</p> <p>(1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station.</p> <p>(2) Loaded all the reusable equipment on the vehicles.</p> <p>(3) Discarded unusable items in the Station 4 sump.</p> <p>14. The decontamination unit moves to the troop decontamination site for decontamination.</p> <p>15. The station operators clean up the detailed troop decontamination site.</p> <p>a. Placed all the used supplies from Station 7 in the Station 7 sump.</p> <p>b. Moved all usable equipment and supplies from all stations to Station 1.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Discarded unusable supplies from Stations 5, 4, and 3 in the sump at Station 1. d. Decontaminated all supplies and equipment collected at Station 1. e. Emptied and rinsed the decontaminant containers from Station 1 in the sump at that station. f. Marked the area. g. Removed overgarments utilizing the MOPP-gear-exchange technique. h. Disposed of used overgarments in the Station 1 sump. i. Moved all the equipment used to fill the sump upwind of the decontamination area. j. Decontaminated rubber gloves and moved all equipment from Station 1 upwind of the decontamination area. Kept this equipment separate from the equipment used the fill the sump. k. Spread a can of STB in each sump and covered the sumps. l. Marked the sumps. m. Submitted an NBC 4 report to higher HQ defining the areas of contamination resulting from the decontamination operation. *16. The contaminated unit conducts reconstitution activities. a. Coordinated with supported battalions for assessment and recovery teams. b. Coordinated and requested maintenance support. c. Coordinated and requested medical support. d. Coordinated and established logistical support for resupply activities.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1014	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 DETECTOR PAPER	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-2001	USE M256 OR M256A1 CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-3010	SUPERVISE EMPLOYMENT OF NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, OR CHEMICAL MARKERS	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A)

(FM 3-100)
(FM 3-4)

(FM 3-11)

(FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Higher headquarters (HQ) informs the unit that opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) warfare in the area. NBC equipment has been issued. Soldiers carry protective masks with their load-carrying equipment (LCE), having mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) gear readily available (within the work area). Digital units confirmed that the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) and supporting systems are operational and loaded. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit uses collective protection or takes measures to limit the effects of NBC attacks and/or contamination and continues the mission. Digital units monitor Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) systems for situational awareness (SA) reports. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The unit leader checks accountability and serviceability of NBC-defense equipment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that NBC-detection equipment was issued to trained operators. b. Ensured that NBC-detection equipment was employed and operating within 15 minutes. c. Identified equipment shortages. d. Took action to obtain replacement equipment. * 2. The unit assumes MOPP levels as directed by higher headquarters or as the NBC situation dictates and is prepared to operate at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that soldiers could mask and hood within 15 seconds. b. Ensured that soldiers could assume MOPP 4 within 8 minutes. * 3. The unit's soldiers take actions to protect themselves against NBC attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Set up and use collective protective shelters (if available). b. Prepared protective shelters, such as foxholes with overhead cover. * 4. The unit leader adjusts the MOPP level using MOPP analysis. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received and analyzed the enemy NBC threat capability. Took the following into consideration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Was the unit targeted or could it be targeted? (2) Did the enemy have the capability to deliver chemical or nuclear weapons? (3) When or where could the enemy most likely deliver the chemical or nuclear weapons? b. Collected and analyzed weather data. Took the following into consideration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Was it day or night? (2) What were the current weather conditions (see chemical downwind message [CDM] or weather report)? 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) What were the weather conditions two, four, and six hours in the future (see CDM or weather report)? c. Analyzed the unit's status and mission. Took the following into consideration: (1) What was the mission? (2) What was the work rate? (3) How long did the work take? (4) What were the training and physical levels of the unit? (5) How long did it take to warn all the soldiers of an NBC attack?		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting chemical warfare, or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters (HQ) directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and limit contamination. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit personnel assume mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 within 8 minutes, and complete preparation efforts before the attack or its effects reaching their location. The unit protects its personnel, equipment, food, and water and continues its mission. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or by digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order. 2. Unit personnel start defensive preparations for a chemical attack. a. Assumed MOPP 4 within 8 minutes after notification. b. Attached M9 detector paper to their right arms and left wrists and to either their right or left ankles and to the vehicles. c. Conducted MOPP field-sanitation procedures. d. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms upwind of position. 3. Unit personnel prepare fighting positions or shelters. a. Used existing, natural, or man-made facilities (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels) as fighting positions and shelters. b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover. NOTE: Fighting positions should have overhead cover consisting of at least a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits. * 4. The noncommissioned officers (NCOs) check personnel and fighting positions. a. Ensured that personnel were at MOPP 4. b. Ensured that individual and platoon fighting positions were hardened with sandbags and overhead cover. * 5. The unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying the MOPP level as appropriate.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is deployed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 2. Intelligence indicates that opposing forces (OPFOR) have initiated chemical warfare. The automatic alarm sounds or the detector paper changes color, causing the unit to react. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The soldiers sound the alarm (vocal or nonvocal), immediately assumes MOPP 4, and utilizes available shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination. The unit reacts to the chemical alarm within 9 seconds.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders ensure that soldiers react to the sound of the chemical-agent alarm or recognize the indicators for a chemical/biological attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Put on their protective masks within 9 seconds. b. Gave the alarm (vocal or nonvocal). c. Assumed MOPP 4 as soon as possible. d. Sought additional shelter, if available. e. Administered a nerve-agent antidote (buddy aid) to other soldiers with symptoms of nerve-agent poisoning (if applicable). f. Administered nerve-agent antidotes to selves (if applicable). g. Checked soldiers to ensure that protective measures were followed. <p>2. The soldiers take additional protective measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies. b. Monitored the area by testing with detector kits. c. Used prevention procedures, such as marking contaminated areas. <p>3. The soldiers conduct immediate decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted skin decontamination. b. Conducted wipe down of personal equipment with M291 or M280 decontamination kits. c. Conducted operator spray-down of equipment. <p>* 4. The leaders initiate unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that casualties were provided with medical care. b. Reported casualties. c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher HQ immediately. d. Continued the mission or requested movement to an alternate location. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
081-831-1000	EVALUATE A CASUALTY	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1030	ADMINISTER NERVE AGENT ANTIDOTE TO SELF (SELF-AID)	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1031	ADMINISTER FIRST AID TO A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY (BUDDY-AID)	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives a strike-warning message from higher headquarters (HQ) directing specific actions to be implemented. Digital units have operational digital systems. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit completes preparations within 30 minutes of a friendly nuclear-strike warning. Digital units send and receive orders / reports via frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The designated radio operator acknowledges the strike warning message. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Authenticated the call. b. Acknowledged the warning by return message. * 2. The unit leader issues a warning order. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Warned subordinate and affected units. b. Ensured that subordinates executed the actions as directed. 3. Unit soldiers complete actions before detonation occurs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Placed vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding. b. Disconnected nonessential electronic equipment. c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. NOTE: Add sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tents in the direction of the strike. Cover openings or position them away from the strike. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Digital units ensure systems are prepared IAW unit tactical standard operating procedures TACSOP h. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and must initiate actions to minimize casualties and damage. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit hardens and shields positions and equipment and conducts periodic monitoring. Digital units send reports, warnings and orders via frequency modulated (FM) or digitally. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit's leader issues a warning order to subordinate units, ensuring that all soldiers understand the order. 2. The unit begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack. a. Placed vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions). b. Turned off and disconnected nonessential electronic equipment according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antenna leads according to the unit's SOP or other guidance. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects. h. Took cover in hardened shelters (if available). i. Used field-expedient shelters. 3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation. a. Continued periodic monitoring. b. Reported all dose-rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)
 (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives orders to cross a radiologically contaminated area. The approximate boundaries of the area are known or marked. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without incurring radiation casualties or spreading contamination. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leaders prepare for the crossing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed individuals who may be exposed to radioactive dust particles to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll their sleeves down, and wear gloves. b. Received operational-exposure guidance (OEG) from the commander (turn back the dose/turn back the dose rate). c. Ensured that radiac-equipment operators checked the instruments. 2. The unit prepares for the crossing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified extra shielding requirements (for example, use sandbags on the vehicle's floor). b. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material. c. Started continuous monitoring. 3. The unit crosses the area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Avoided stirring up dust. b. Kept out of the dust cloud by increasing the intervals and distances between the vehicles. c. Conducted movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles should be buttoned up). 4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Checked for casualties. b. Reported casualties (if applicable). c. Conducted necessary decontamination. d. Evacuated casualties. e. Continued the mission. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A)
(FM 3-50)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit encounters smoke, friendly or enemy, while conducting operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit exploits the threat smoke or employs friendly smoke to conceal its own activities and continues the mission. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The unit does not allow smoke to impede the performance of the mission. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed its mission in the presence of smoke. b. Used threat smoke to conceal its own movements. c. Moved to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the threat's use of smoke. d. Considered using countersmoke to conceal their own activities. 2. The unit employs organic smoke-grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated smoke operations with the unit commander or the supported unit. b. Determined the wind direction and speed. c. Determined where to release smoke and where it would travel. d. Determined the duration of the smoke operations. e. Determined the effects of weather conditions on the smoke plan. f. Ensured that the smoke covered a larger area than the unit's position. g. Requested smoke support from other units (if organic systems would not accomplish the task). 3. The unit uses target acquisition and guidance systems. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined what available target acquisition systems were effective in the smoke and used them. b. Requested target acquisition and guidance systems that were effective in the smoke. * 4. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) requests resupply of smoke munitions when required. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requested smoke grenades and smoke pots. b. Distributed smoke grenades and smoke pots. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)
 (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders prepare the unit for fallout. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that individuals covered their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, rolled their sleeves down, and wore gloves. b. Covered equipment; munitions; petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL); food; and water containers or placed them inside shelters or vehicles. c. Used shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout. d. Ensured that continuous monitoring was maintained using available nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) detection and identification equipment. 2. The designated personnel monitor fallout. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained total-dose information using available total-dose instruments. b. Ensured that exposure was minimized while the commander determined if relocation to a clean area was necessary or possible. c. Calculated the optimum time of exit. d. Sent NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters (HQ) using secure means when possible. * 3. The unit leader develops a contingency plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used guidance from higher HQ based on the mission and previous radiation exposure. b. Planned for rotation of individuals to minimize exposure. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)
 (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Soldiers observe a brilliant flash of light and/or a mushroom-shaped cloud. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit takes action to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The soldiers take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Without warning-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Closed eyes immediately. (2) Dropped to the ground in a prone position, with head toward blast, if possible (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately dropped down inside the vehicle). (3) Kept head and face down and helmet on. (4) Remained prone until the blast wave passed and all debris stopped falling. b. With warning-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identified the best available shelter (fighting positions or inside shelters). (2) Moved to the shelter. (3) Took actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation. (4) Kept clothing loosely fitted with headgear on at all times. (5) Protected eyes and minimized exposed skin areas. <p>* 2. The leaders reorganize the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reestablished the chain of command. b. Reestablished communications. c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) 1 report to the higher headquarters (HQ). d. Treated casualties. e. Reported casualties. f. Evacuated casualties. g. Evaluated facilities for protection from residual radiation. h. Implemented continuous monitoring. i. Submitted a damage assessment to higher HQ. j. Initiated an area-damage-control plan as required. k. Extinguished all fires before they spread out of control. <p>* 3. The leaders ensure that weapon systems are operational.</p> <p>4. The soldiers right overturned vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Checked for loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids. b. Performed operator's maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The soldiers improve cover (if applicable). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Chose dense covering material. Covered in depth. Provided strong support. Covered as much of the opening as practical. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1018	REACT TO A NUCLEAR HAZARD	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-3005	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 1 REPORTS	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE	STP 21-24-SMCT
081-831-1005	PREVENT SHOCK	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1007	GIVE FIRST AID FOR BURNS	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1016	PUT ON A FIELD OR PRESSURE DRESSING	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1017	PUT ON A TOURNIQUET	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1025	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN ABDOMINAL WOUND	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1033	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN HEAD WOUND	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1034	SPLINT A SUSPECTED FRACTURE	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-5) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is operating in a contaminated environment and/or is contaminated. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 is increasing, and protective gear is in danger of penetration by contamination. Time and the tactical situation permit the unit to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each soldier. For a nonsupported decontamination, unit decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, a decontamination unit is available, operational, and tasked to provide decontamination support. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit decontaminates its individual gear and conducts MOPP-gear exchange (utilizing the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) contamination. The unit limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment and minimizes contamination on soldiers according to Field Manual (FM) 3-5. The unit reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to FM 3-5 and reduces chemical and biological contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provide temporary relief from MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The contaminated unit's leader determines the extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received input from staff or subordinate leaders. b. Established priorities of decontamination. 2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters (HQ). The request should, as a minimum, include the-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designation of the contaminated unit. b. Location of the contaminated unit. c. Frequency and call sign of the contaminated unit. d. Time the unit became contaminated. e. Number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that are contaminated. f. Type of contamination. g. Special requirements (patient decontamination station, recovery assets, unit decontamination team, and so forth). * 3. The contaminated unit coordinates with higher HQ. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained permission to conduct decontamination and obtain necessary support. b. Selected a linkup point to meet supporting units (company supply section, company/battalion power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE] crew, decontamination squad/platoon, and so forth). c. Coordinated with supporting elements. d. Requested replacement MOPP gear. e. Coordinated with supporting units to determine if they would also conduct a MOPP-gear exchange. 4. The contaminated unit's leader and NBC specialist select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring that the site selected provides the following: 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Adequate overhead concealment.</p> <p>b. Good drainage.</p> <p>c. Easy access and exit (but off the main routes).</p> <p>d. Proximity to a water source large enough to support the vehicle washdown.</p> <p>e. Area large enough to accommodate units involved in the operational decontamination (100 square meters for both vehicle-washdown and MOPP-gear-exchange sites).</p> <p>5. The contaminated unit coordinates for operational decontamination support (company/battalion PDDE crew or decontamination unit).</p> <p>a. Requested operational decontamination support.</p> <p>b. Notified higher HQ of the area for the operational decontamination.</p> <p>c. Established communications with the decontamination unit.</p> <p>d. Ensured that the decontamination unit knew the locations of the linkup and selected decontamination sites.</p> <p>6. The contaminated unit and supporting units move to the decontamination site.</p> <p>a. Met at the linkup point as coordinated.</p> <p>b. Provided security at both the linkup point and the decontamination site.</p> <p>7. The units prepare for operational decontamination.</p> <p>a. Set up the decontamination site.</p> <p>(1) The supporting decontamination unit crew set up the vehicle-washdown site.</p> <p>(2) The contaminated unit set up the MOPP-gear-exchange site not less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle-washdown site.</p> <p>(3) The remainder of the unit prepared its equipment for decontamination.</p> <p>b. Conducted preparatory actions in the predecontamination area.</p> <p>(1) Vehicle crews (except for the operators) dismounted unless they had an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior.</p> <p>(2) Dismounted crews removed mud and camouflage from the vehicles. The contaminated unit provided personnel to do this if the crews did not dismount.</p> <p>(3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews.</p> <p>(a) Ensured that vehicle operators were briefed (included the use of overhead cover and concealment and the proper interval).</p> <p>(b) Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up (all doors, hatches, and other openings were closed or covered).</p> <p>(4) Moved vehicles, with operators, to the vehicle-washdown site.</p> <p>(5) Moved dismounted crews and all other soldiers in the contaminated unit to the MOPP-gear-exchange site.</p> <p>8. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) of the decontamination unit supervises the operation of the vehicle-washdown site, ensuring that the--</p> <p>a. Vehicle operators maintained the proper interval between vehicles while processing through the washdown station.</p> <p>b. Vehicles were washed properly.</p> <p>(1) Started at the top and worked down.</p> <p>(2) Sprayed hot, soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicle.</p> <p>(3) Monitored water consumption.</p> <p>c. Vehicles moved to the assembly area after vehicle washdown.</p> <p>d. Vehicle operators moved to the MOPP-gear-exchange site and conducted MOPP-gear exchange.</p> <p>9. The contaminated unit conducts MOPP-gear exchange.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Prepared the equipment decontamination station (with super tropical bleach [STB] dry mix).</p> <p>b. Briefed the MOPP-gear-exchange participants on the procedures to be followed.</p> <p>c. Placed decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (plastics, poncho, or other similar material).</p> <p>d. Exchanged the MOPP gear using the buddy system.</p> <p>e. Moved soldiers to the assembly area after completing the MOPP-gear exchange.</p> <p>NOTES:</p> <p>1. Ensured that the supporting units had the opportunity to use the MOPP-gear-exchange site before proceeding.</p> <p>2. The supporting decontamination unit cleaned and marked the site and reported the area of contamination (using NBC 4 report) to higher HQ.</p> <p>10. Unit leaders account for all personnel and equipment after completion of the operational decontamination.</p> <p>11. The contaminated unit's leader reports to higher HQ.</p> <p>a. Reported the completion and location of the decontamination site (vehicle-washdown and the MOPP-gear-exchange sites).</p> <p>b. Requested permission to perform unmasking procedures if, through testing, no hazard was detected.</p> <p>c. Determined the adequacy of decontamination and adjusted the MOPP level as required (after obtaining approval from higher HQ).</p> <p>12. The contaminated unit continues the mission.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1023	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHEN CHANGING MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A)
(FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is en route to a new location on a designated route. The unit cannot move off that route and still complete its assigned mission. The unit discovers contamination on the route and is directed to cross the contaminated area. digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the contaminated area without suffering chemical-agent casualties. Digital units send reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digitally IAW unit tactical standard operating procedures (TACSOP).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader selects a route across the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) 5 (Chemical) report and/or reconnaissance reports to select a route. b. Selected a route that minimized exposure consistent with the mission. c. Obtained a route clearance and approval. <p>2. The unit prepares to cross the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assumed mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 for crossing the area. b. Ensured that all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders knew the route of march or had strip maps. c. Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up (mounted movement). d. Placed externally-stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material. e. Attached M9 detector paper to the soldiers and the vehicles to provide warning of contamination. <p>3. The unit crosses the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Avoided low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation. b. Conducted dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible. c. Crossed the area as quickly and as carefully as possible. <p>4. The unit exits the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Checked for casualties. b. Reported casualties (if applicable). c. Conducted necessary decontamination. d. Continued the mission. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1014	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 DETECTOR PAPER	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-2004	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 4 REPORTS	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-3004	SUPERVISE THE CROSSING OF A CONTAMINATED AREA	STP 21-24-SMCT
04-3303.01-0034	Navigate Using a Map and Compass	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3306.01-0003	Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields)	STP 21-II-MQS
071-329-1005	DETERMINE A LOCATION ON THE GROUND BY TERRAIN ASSOCIATION	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-1-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: PREPARE AN OBSTACLE PLAN (BATTALION) (05-1-0001)
 (FM 90-7) (FM 20-32)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is supporting a maneuver unit. An engineer estimate has been prepared and an initial engineer plan has been developed to support the operation. The engineer battalion staff, the assistant brigade engineer (ABE), or the brigade engineer is tasked to prepare an obstacle plan using the estimate and guidance from the supported unit commander. Higher headquarters (HQ) guidance identifies responsibilities, reserve and situational obstacles, obstacle belts and zones, obstacle restrictions, scatterable-mine (SCATMINE) employment authority and concept, priorities, and special instructions. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP)4. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The obstacle plan supports the brigade commander's scheme of maneuver. It outlines how and where tactical obstacles will be used to attack the enemy maneuver and multiply the effects and capabilities of fire power.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The battalion staff obtains available information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Considered the constraints and restraints in the plan received from higher HQ. b. Considered the supported unit's tactical plans. c. Considered the initial analysis developed as part of the engineer estimate process. d. Considered fire-support (FS) integration to cover obstacles during and after emplacement. 2. The brigade and engineer Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3)/ABE develops the initial obstacle plan. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Included obstacle belts and zones. b. Included obstacle groups (reserve/situational). c. Included obstacle restrictions. d. Included the SCATMINE employment concept (identified by the SCATMINE system). e. Included the SCATMINE employment authority (based on the system and self-destruct time). f. Included the priority of distribution of assets: Class IV; Class V (engineer); other obstacle assets under division control, to include units from higher echelons; and the SCATMINE allocation by sortie for Gator and air Volcano, the number of rounds for area denial artillery munition (ADAM)/remote antiarmor mine system (RAAMS), the number of mines and reloads for the ground-emplaced mine scattering system (GEMSS)/mine dispensing system (Flipper) and Ground Volcano, and the number of dispensers for the modular-pack mine system (MOPMS). g. Included the execution authority and special instructions for reserved demolitions/obstacles. h. Included the direct and indirect fires available to obtain the desired effect (turn, block, disrupt, and fix). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>i. Included the lanes and routes key to the unit's maneuver or logistical plan and instructions for their closure.</p> <p>NOTE: The initial plan contains tentative information. While directive in nature, the specifics of the plan are modified based on the tactical plans of the subordinate maneuver elements.</p> <p>* 3. The battalion receives from the assistant division engineer (ADE) the division obstacle zones in the initial plan.</p> <p>* 4. The brigade engineer includes brigade obstacle belts in the initial obstacle plan.</p> <p>5. The battalion staff integrates the initial obstacle plan into the tactical plan.</p> <p>a. Directed only those items key to the maneuver echelon's plan.</p> <p>b. Allowed maximum flexibility for subordinate maneuver commanders to determine the type and location of obstacles consistent with the supported commander's scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>c. Provided the plan to the maneuver S3/Assistant Chief of Staff, G3 (Operations and Plans) (G3) and incorporated it into the engineer annex.</p> <p>6. The battalion staff consolidates subordinate-unit obstacle plans into the final obstacle plan.</p> <p>* 7. The division engineer ensures that the final obstacle plan is complete.</p> <p>a. Included the location, type, and special characteristics of each obstacle, all obstacle zones and belts, and all SCATMINE obstacles with employment authority.</p> <p>b. Included a timetable and an estimated completion time for obstacle zones and belts not yet completed.</p> <p>c. Included specific orders stating under what conditions and by whose authority reserve obstacles are executed.</p> <p>d. Included the exact location of routes and lanes open according to the tactical and logistical plan, including those specified by higher HQ.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Support a River-Crossing Operation (05-1-0600)
 (FM 90-13) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is conducting continuous operations in support of a maneuver force. The battalion commander has received an operation order (OPORD) to provide personnel and equipment to support a hasty or deliberate river-crossing operation. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The battalion plans for and monitors the crossing operation to ensure the maneuver element crosses the water obstacle in accordance with (IAW) the OPORD and crossing plan. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The battalion commander reviews the OPORD and extracts specific information needed to conduct a mission analysis and prepare a tentative plan considering the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Overall concept of the operation. b. Type of crossing to be conducted (hasty or deliberate). c. Time of crossing. d. Personnel and equipment to be transported across the river. e. Enemy situation. f. Location of phase lines, boundaries, and crossing areas. g. Location of crossing sites. h. Location of engineer regulating points (ERP) and engineer-equipment-parks (EEP). i. Organic personnel and equipment needed to support the crossing operation. j. Supporting and supported units. <p>* 2. The battalion staff provides assistance to the commander in preparing for the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Determined the available organic personnel. (2) Requested additional personnel as needed. b. The Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) section-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Consolidated the available intelligence information concerning the area of operation (AO) and enemy activity. (2) Conducted a terrain analysis of the AO. (3) Advised the commander as needed. c. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) section-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Alerted subordinate units. (2) Conducted a map reconnaissance and prepared an operational overlay. (3) Selected a reconnaissance element from the subordinate unit to conduct a ground reconnaissance of the area, proposed ERPs, EEPs, crossing sites, and routes used. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(4) Consolidated and evaluated reconnaissance information when received from the reconnaissance elements. (5) Submitted required reports to higher headquarters.</p> <p>d. The Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) section-- (1) Determined what organic equipment was available to support the mission. (2) Determined what augmentation support was needed. (3) Determined what logistical support was needed for the operation. (4) Submitted requests for logistical support to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>e. The communications section-- (1) Determined the amount of communications equipment available for the operation. (2) Developed a battalion communications plan and/or net for the crossing. (3) Ensured the communications plan supported the overall concept of the operation IAW the OPORD. (4) Requested additional communications equipment through higher HQ, when needed. (5) Monitored subordinate unit communications and ensured proper radio procedures were used at all times. (6) Supervised and assisted subordinate units as needed.</p> <p>* 3. The battalion commander evaluates all available information and completes the OPORD. a. Selected the crossing sites based on the reconnaissance information. b. Ensured the OPORD supported the overall crossing plan. c. Submitted the OPORD to higher HQ for approval.</p> <p>* 4. The battalion commander issues the OPORD to subordinate commanders ensuring each understand their specific mission.</p> <p>* 5. The battalion commander, assisted by the battalion staff, monitors the preparation for and conduct of the crossing operation. a. Ensured the units were prepared for the mission IAW the OPORD. b. Ensured the subordinate elements completed the missions by the time outlined in the OPORD. c. Received progress reports from subordinate elements.</p> <p>* 6. The battalion commander immediately informs higher HQ of any delays or changes in the crossing plan.</p> <p>* 7. The battalion commander submits progress reports to higher HQ.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat-service-support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

TASK: Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

TASK: Maintain Contact (5-OPFOR-0003)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

STANDARD: Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the opposing forces (OPFOR) as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

TASK: Disrupt Enemy Movement and Operations using Persistent and Nonpersistent Chemical Weapons (5-OPFOR-0015)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and/or dense wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

TASK: Surrender to the Capturing Unit on the Battlefield (5-OPFOR-0024)

CONDITION: The enemy has captured opposing forces' (OPFOR) soldiers, documents, and equipment sensitive to the OPFOR tactical operations.

STANDARD: The OPFOR soldiers retain or destroy documents and equipment. The OPFOR surrenders the documents and the equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempts to conceal or destroy items of tactical value. The OPFOR attempts escape and evasion. 1. Prevents the successful capture of the documents and the equipment. 2. Destroys the documents and the equipment. 3. Removes identifying markings from the equipment. 4. Removes unit-identifying insignia. 5. Provides misleading information. 6. Plans an escape. 7. Delays movement to the nearest collection point. 8. Prevents safeguarding of the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in order to cause embarrassment to the United States (US).

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Plan/Supervise Air-Assault Operations (05-1-0906)
(FM 90-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit has been assigned to perform an air-assault operation. Sufficient aviation assets to lift the unit are placed as operational control (OPCON) to the unit. Aviation assets may be night-vision qualified. Attack helicopters are available. Indirect fire support and close-air support (CAS) may be available. Pickup zones (PZ) and loading zones (LZ) are not occupied by the enemy, but they may be subjected to enemy air attack, indirect fire, or direct enemy ground fire (mounted or dismounted) up to platoon size. The enemy may have air-defense artillery (ADA) capability en route or near the objective area. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit secures the PZ and LZ in accordance with (IAW) the operation order (OPORD) and is prepared for movement at the time and place specified in the OPORD. A minimum of 75 percent of the leaders, personnel, and key equipment (or at least the minimum force required to accomplish mission) are moved to the LZ to accomplish the mission. The unit accomplishes the mission consistent with the higher commander's intent.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The battalion commander and staff perform an engineer battlefield assessment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with higher headquarters Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) to obtain intelligence gathered from all available sources to include-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Enemy air-defense capability. (2) Enemy situation on the ground. (3) Aerial reconnaissance photographs. (4) Weather forecast. (5) Maps. (6) Electronic data. b. Coordinated with the air mission commander (AMC) to select primary and alternate PZs and LZs. The AMC selected primary and alternate flight routes and coordinated them with the air assault task force command (AATFC). c. Battalion scouts or attack helicopter assets (or air reconnaissance) performed reconnaissance operations of the proposed LZs, routes, and PZs, when time and the situation allowed. If not, a detailed map reconnaissance and study of aerial photographs were performed. * 2. The battalion commander or Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) prepare an engineer estimate to support the ground tactical plan. * 3. The battalion commander or S3 develops a landing plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Estimated the landing time. b. Determined landing formations. c. Provided reconnaissance and overwatch or screening instructions for attack-helicopter forces during the landing phase. d. Specified the location of the LZs. e. Listed troops, equipment, and supplies to be used in the air assault and sequences. f. Identified fire support to be used during the landing phase. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 4. The battalion commander or S3 develops an air movement plan in coordination with the AMC. The air movement plan supports the landing plan and includes--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Instructions for air movement of troops, equipment, and supplies from the PZs to the LZs that were required for the mission. b. Start points, passage points, checkpoints, and release points. c. Air speeds, altitudes, and aircraft formations, when applicable. d. Action en route, suppression of enemy air defense/close-air support (SEAD/CAS) operations, and reconnaissance/air assault security en route. e. Downed aircraft/abort procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) When aircraft was forced to land on enemy terrain due to mechanical problems or combat damage, every effort was made to protect the aircraft and crew. (2) The airmobile task-force commander (AMTFC) was notified and took action to recover the aircraft and crew. (3) Abort procedure for a mission was the AMTFC responsibility. f. Known or suspected enemy locations. g. Forward-area rearm/refuel point (FARP) location. h. Deception plan. i. Air movement table. <p>* 5. The battalion commander/S3 develops a loading plan with input from subordinate elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the location of the PZs. b. Lifted and chalked assignments for subordinate elements. These assignments provided for cross loading, tactical integrity, and sequencing of appropriate forces. c. Determined the bump plan. d. Identified PZ controlled measures and responsibilities; such as smoke, reconnaissance, and security of PZ during staging and loading phases, to include fire support, when available. e. Detailed aircraft landing formations and locations of assault forces on the ground. f. Included the sequence of aircraft loading (air-loading table). g. Specified straggler control. <p>* 6. The battalion commander or S3 develops a staging plan in coordination with the AMC, to include--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishing the movement and arrival times of troops, equipment, and supplies to the PZ, and schedules. b. Determining the PZ organization, flight routes, and serial linkup of aviation forces. c. Ensuring the arrival of the battalion before the arrival of the aircraft at the PZ. <p>* 7. The battalion commander or staff and subordinate leaders conduct preparations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted final coordination briefings between the AMC and his staff, the attack-helicopter unit commander, and the air-assault battalion commander and his staff. The OPORD was issued to all appropriate personnel. b. Formulated and disseminated plans and orders to units. c. Ensured that the ground maneuver force performed a rehearsal, to include actions in the objective area, actions on contact, movement techniques, loading/unloading aircraft, and staging operations. d. Coordinated passage of lines, if applicable. e. Coordinated fire support. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>8. The battalion executes staging operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed a reconnaissance and attack/reconnaissance assets established an overwatch and/or screen mission. b. Moved to the PZ, arrived IAW times prescribed in the OPORD, and task organized. <p>9. The battalion performs PZ operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Loaded aircraft IAW the loading plan. b. Adjusted to changes in numbers and types of aircraft, and executed bump plan, when required. c. Maintained local security during loading. d. Ensured that all personnel, equipment, and supplies were loaded, and aircraft was ready to depart PZ within two minutes for each lift. e. Released available attack/reconnaissance assets from the PZ security to perform air-route reconnaissance and to establish mobile flank screens for air movement to LZs. <p>10. The battalion arrives and secures LZs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established an overwatch or screen of LZs for insertion of the battalion. b. Established blocking positions on all high-speed avenues of approach into LZs. c. Established perimeter security sufficient to complete the LZ operations and to prevent attacks from the enemy. d. Consolidated, reorganized, and moved off the LZ within 30 minutes of arrival. e. Ensured that units arrived at the objective area with sufficient combat power to perform operations. f. Employed aviation forces to provide overwatch during movement to and on the objective, when applicable. g. Reported the consolidation at the LZ to higher headquarters. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Conduct Deployment Operations (05-1-1026)
(FM 55-65)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is directed to report to a port of embarkation (POE). This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The battalion deploys all unit personnel, equipment, and basic loads by the required modes of transportation (road, rail, air, or sea) to its destination by the time specified in the operations order (OPORD).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The battalion staff develops and maintains strategic movement plans and the standing operating procedure (SOP). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Developed and maintained contingency operations for all modes of transportation. b. Developed individual load plans for aircraft, rail cars, and vehicles based on the unit's table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE). c. Prepared a unit movement plan that identified administrative personnel processing, security, logistics, and coordination requirements for implementation. d. Developed procedures for detailed personnel processing, censorship, and security. e. Coordinated with the installation and transportation activities to ensure the availability of securing materials required for each move. 2. The battalion initiates the unit plan. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initiated recall procedures. All unit personnel were accounted for no later than the time specified in the SOP. b. Established security of the unit area. Concealed unit markings on all equipment and personnel, restricted personnel to the unit area, implemented a censorship plan, and restricted access to the unit area. c. Established communications to higher and subordinate units. d. Reported personnel, logistics, and maintenance status to higher headquarters. Reports were 100-percent correct. 3. The battalion staff performs unit-movement staff functions. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) received and disseminated the operations concept to the battalion staff and subunit leaders. b. The Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) ensured that companies identified and corrected shortcomings in equipment (to include personal equipment), supplies, common table of allowances (CTA)/50, and basic loads. c. The S3/S4 ensured that equipment loads were packed according to vehicle load plans. d. The S3/S4 packaged and marked the load with Department of Defense (DD) Form 1387-2. e. The S3/S4 submitted requests to the movement control center (MCC) and/or installation transportation officer (ITO) for convoy and special hauling permits and additional hauls as required. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The unit conducts readiness actions outlined in the unit SOP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Secured the unit area. b. Loaded and secured ammunition. c. Processed replacement personnel. d. Secured privately owned vehicles (POV). e. Inventoried and secured personal property. f. Conducted communications and electronics checks. g. Updated dependent affairs, such as enrollment in the Defense Enrollment Eligibility Reporting System (DEERS) and service member's pay. <p>5. The subordinate elements prepare for movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured equipment was packed and loaded according to load plans. b. Determined the center of balance that was indicated on each item prepared for air movement. c. Prepared and reduced all vehicles to the configuration required by the mode of transportation being used. d. Assembled unit personnel at designated staging areas. The ITO and transportation movements office(r) (TMO) supervised the equipment inspections. e. Unit load teams accomplished loading according to approved load plans. <p>6. The battalion staff inspects subordinate units. Items include--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. CTA 50-900, unit equipment, and personnel clothing. b. Vehicle maintenance, ensuring they meet deployment standards. c. Weapons issue and accountability. d. Mess equipment, if available. e. Basic load for compliance with load plans. <p>7. The battalion deploys by convoy to the railhead, POE, and/or airhead, as required.</p> <p>8. The battalion performs preembarkation operations at the departure airfield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. The S3 established liaison with the departure airfield control group (DACG). b. The S4 ensured that shoring material was available and readily accessible. c. The S3 ensured that chalk commanders were appointed and briefed by the DACG. d. The S3 ensured that prepared passenger equipment manifests were given to the DACG. e. The S3 ensured that each chalk responded to all call-forward orders and directed issue by the DACG before release to the airlift control element (ALCE). f. The S4/ALCE ensured that shoring, floor protection material, and 463L pallet dunnage were available and ready for use, when required. g. The S3 ensured that chalk integrity was maintained and chalks were properly loaded. h. The companies assembled vehicles, personnel, and equipment into chalks according to the unit readiness SOP. i. The companies performed final preparation of vehicles and equipment for loading. j. The companies maintained unit integrity and security. k. The chalk commander secured two copies of the final passenger and equipment manifest, one for himself and one according to ALCE instructions. <p>9. The battalion deploys by rail to the POE.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. The S3/S4 ensured the availability of blocking and bracing material. b. The S3 assembled troops, vehicles, and equipment at the designated railhead staging area. The S3 prepared and processed for the movement according to instructions contained in applicable publications, the unit SOP, and higher headquarters directives. c. The S3 inspected loading, blocking, and bracing of vehicles and equipment by unit personnel. ITO/TMO checked cargo documentation. d. The battalion accomplished tie-down procedures according to applicable technical manuals (TMs) for each type of equipment. e. The unit, ITO, and railroad representatives performed joint inspections of loaded equipment before release of movement. 10. The battalion deploys by sea. a. The S3 coordinated with the MCC for equipment operators and maintenance personnel for the port support activity. b. The MCC inspected the chalked equipment and stencils or marks the ship manifest before loading. c. The S3/S4 obtained from the MCC ship manifest the estimated date of arrival at the POE.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
551-721-1306	PERFORM OPERATOR/CREW PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS/SERVICES	STP 5-12B1-SM STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-0301)
(FM 20-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is tactically deployed. The enemy has air- and ground-surveillance capability, to include infrared sensors. Digital units have performed functionality checks of their ABCS systems and they are operational. Camouflage resources are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Vehicles, equipment, and individual fighting positions cannot be detected by ground forces within small-arms range. The element's location or identity cannot be determined through aerial photographs or ground surveillance radar (GSR). Digital units update their position through FBCB2. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader selects concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the vehicle operators used concealed routes whenever possible, following and paralleling hedges, woods, fences, cultivated fields, and other natural terrain features. b. Ensured that the vehicle's track signature continued past the parked location to another logical spot. <p>2. The operators maneuver vehicles along concealed routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used existing tracks. b. Avoided movement near terrain features (such as hilltops and road intersections) that may have been used as a reference point by the enemy's ground or aerial fires. c. Obliterated vehicle tracks where they turned, concealing vehicle positions. <p>3. The element conceals vehicles and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Positioned the vehicles and equipment under natural cover or in shadows. b. Positioned the vehicles and equipment so that their shape blended with the surroundings. c. Used natural materials to distort and combine with the shape or the shadow of the vehicles and equipment. d. Blended natural materials with the surrounding area. e. Replaced cut vegetation when it withered or changed color. f. Used nets to create shadows. g. Used camouflage-screening systems to enhance natural materials. h. Ensured that heat sources (generators, engines, and mess areas) were kept under screening systems, even when using natural concealment. i. Covered shiny objects such as windshields, headlights, cab windows, and wet vehicle bodies. j. Dug in (if in desert or open terrain) when the situation permitted. k. Concealed the vehicle track signatures in snow-covered terrain. l. Disguised the vehicles and equipment to change their appearance or to resemble something of lesser or greater threat to the enemy. 		
<p>* 4. The leaders enforce camouflage discipline.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Ensured that the unit's activities did not change the area's appearance or reveal the presence of military equipment. b. Enforced measures to maintain blackout conditions at night. c. Ensured that measures were taken to eliminate or reduce noise by muffling or masking them with terrain, defilade positions, or shields. d. Ensured the prompt and complete police of the debris or spoil from the area. * 5. The leaders know when opposing forces (OPFOR) surveillance is overhead. a. Received satellite transmission (SATRAN) information from higher headquarters (HQ). b. Disseminated pertinent SATRAN information to subordinates. c. Incorporated SATRAN information into the tactical plan.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-0401.20-0001	Direct Unit Air Defense	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
01-3301.02-0011	Defend a Company Position	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
03-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
03-8952.00-9050	Employ Directed Energy and Laser Protective Measures	STP 21-II-MQS
04-3303.02-0014	Prepare Platoon or Company Combat Orders	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-328-5301	INSPECT PERSONNEL/EQUIPMENT	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-430-0006	CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A PLATOON	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-0911)

(FM 55-30)
(FM 24-35)

(FM 21-75)
(FM 24-35-1)

(FM 24-19)
(FM 71-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: A convoy's main body is attacked by a squad- to platoon-size force. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The convoy protects itself and attacks or disengages the enemy. The convoy minimizes casualties or damage due to inadequate immediate-action measures. Digital units send reports, requests for fires and orders via frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The convoy commander prepares for combat operations. The convoy commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designated and positioned the security elements throughout the convoy (front, rear, and flank). b. Established radio communications with the security elements. c. Designated actions upon enemy contact (action front, left, right, or rear; air attack; or indirect fire). d. Assigned each armed vehicle a sector of fire for the move. Ensured that the convoy had 360-degree coverage while moving. e. Designated en route rally points and the actions taken at those points. f. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) for indirect fire along the planned route. g. Received a digital update from the battalion Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) on probable enemy actions influencing the convoy route or the mission. <p>2. The convoy prepares for combat operations. The convoy--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Loaded the vehicles, stowed or tied down all loose equipment, and ensured that there was enough space to bring weapons to bear. Air guards were present. b. Ensured that the weapons were functional and had their basic load of ammunition. c. Rehearsed the procedures for enemy contact before the start point (SP). d. Ensured that each vehicle commander knew the route and all procedures. <p>3. The convoy reacts to enemy contact. The convoy--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Scanned the area for the enemy and returned fire at the identified enemy positions. b. Sought available cover. c. Maneuvered the vehicles to allow the gunner to engage the enemy. Moved all unarmed vehicles to cover. d. Provided suppressive gunnery fire on the enemy. e. Deployed the security teams and reported the situation to the convoy commander. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 4. The convoy commander develops the situation. The convoy commander-</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initiated the fire and maneuver. b. Requested indirect-fire support. c. Sought information on the enemy's strength, composition, and disposition. The convoy commander evaluated the direction and the volume of the enemy fire, the confirmed or suspected enemy positions, and the terrain capacity for the masking forces. <p>* 5. The convoy commander selects a course of action based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and the developing situation. The convoy commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maneuvered to attack the enemy's flank. b. Conducted a frontal assault. c. Broke contact and moved away from the enemy position by fire and maneuver. <p>6. The security element engages the enemy (within capabilities).</p> <p>* 7. The convoy commander reports the tactical situation to higher headquarters.</p> <p>8. The unit reorganizes and resumes its convoy. The unit--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reconstituted the security force. b. Treated and evacuated casualties. c. Reported casualties. d. Redistributed the ammunition and equipment. e. Recovered any damaged equipment or destroyed it in place. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
03-4966.90-0010	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services	STP 21-II-MQS
03-5101.00-0282	Direct the Storage of Unit Supplies, Weapons, Equipment, and Ammunition	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
03-5101.00-0283	Supervise the Maintenance of Unit Prescribed Load List	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS
052-194-3500	CONDUCT A PATROL	STP 21-I-MQS STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS
061-283-1002	LOCATE A TARGET BY GRID COORDINATES	STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-326-5605	Control Movement of a Fire Team	STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP 5-12B24-SM-TG
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad	STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP 5-12B24-SM-TG
071-332-5022	PREPARE A BATTALION SITUATION REPORT (SITREP)	STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP 21-24-SMCT
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation	STP 21-24-SMCT
091-309-0711	DIRECT VEHICLE AND EQUIPMENT RECOVERY OPERATIONS	STP 21-24-SMCT
113-573-0002	CONDUCT OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) PROCEDURES	STP 21-24-SMCT
113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)	STP 21-24-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

TASK: Surrender to the Capturing Unit on the Battlefield (5-OPFOR-0024)

CONDITION: The enemy has captured opposing forces' (OPFOR) soldiers, documents, and equipment sensitive to the OPFOR tactical operations.

STANDARD: The OPFOR soldiers retain or destroy documents and equipment. The OPFOR surrenders the documents and the equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempts to conceal or destroy items of tactical value. The OPFOR attempts escape and evasion. 1. Prevents the successful capture of the documents and the equipment. 2. Destroys the documents and the equipment. 3. Removes identifying markings from the equipment. 4. Removes unit-identifying insignia. 5. Provides misleading information. 6. Plans an escape. 7. Delays movement to the nearest collection point. 8. Prevents safeguarding of the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in order to cause embarrassment to the United States (US).

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Conduct Self-Extraction from Remotely-Delivered Mines (05-3-0113)
 (FM 20-32) (FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is supporting a construction mission in a tactical environment. Remotely-delivered mines impact on or around the element. The personnel have fragmentation armor and ballistic glasses (if available). Each vehicle is equipped with 30 meters of line and light grapnels. Digital units have performed functionality checks of their digital systems and have communications, digitally or frequency modulated (FM) to the task force (TF). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company extracts all vehicles and personnel from the minefield. Digital units update the common operational picture as time permits via digital means and maintains radio communications. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-area protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The individual who first discovers a mine initiates the alarm according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). 2. The command post (CP) personnel receive the alarm and alert the units. The CP personnel-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Notified all of the elements. If the element was-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Mounted, it accelerated and moved out of the area. When tactically feasible, the element moved in a column along a hard-surfaced road, watching for mines along the route. (2) Dismounted, it moved rapidly out of the area along the best-cleared route, watching for mines and trip wires. (3) Dismounted and deployed in a bivouac or assembly area (AA), it departed immediately along a hard-surfaced road (if practical), watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines. (4) Not able to depart immediately, it remained in covered or protected positions until the minefield was deployed. The element carefully cleared the mines from the positions through detonation and departed as soon as it was feasible, following a hard-surfaced road (if practical) and watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines. b. Informed the higher HQ and adjacent units of the situation. The CP personnel included a description of the mines and the extent to which they were employed. c. Requested counterbattery fire (if the mines were artillery-delivered). * 3. The vehicle commanders check the immediate area. The element personnel remove the mines and the trip wires from the vehicles. The vehicle commanders-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Dismounted and inspected the vehicles for mines and trip wires. b. Removed the trip wires from the soft-skinned vehicles using a grapnel or a similar device. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: When using a grapnel to remove trip wires, throw the grapnel away from the covered position. Sound a warning to others in the area before throwing the grapnel.</p> <p>c. Left any vehicles touching or blocked in by antitank (AT) mines until the remainder of the unit was out of the minefield.</p> <p>* 4. The element leaders identify unmovable vehicles and designate one or more lanes as exit lanes to allow remaining personnel and vehicles to leave the minefield, normally along previously used access routes.</p> <p>5. The element personnel mark designated lanes and destroy or remove mines within them. The element personnel--</p> <p>a. Used visual means to locate mines and mark vehicle lanes. The lanes were at least 5 meters wide. The element personnel marked lanes according to the tactical situation and threat; however, the marked areas also allowed for personnel to reenter the minefield and recover equipment or vehicles.</p> <p>b. Destroyed or removed all mines in the lanes, using a grapnel hook or other means, as directed by the company commander. The element personnel detonated only unmovable mines, reducing the likelihood of fragmentation injuries and equipment damage.</p> <p>* 6. The vehicle commanders direct the personnel ground-guiding the vehicles out of the minefield. The vehicle commanders--</p> <p>a. Ensured that the individual elements moved only when directed to do so by the chain of command.</p> <p>b. Placed any equipment not in contact with a mine or a trip wire onto the vehicles.</p> <p>c. Ensured that the individual crews ground-guided the vehicles to a designated lane or allowed the vehicles to exit the minefield on their own.</p> <p>7. The company personnel remove any equipment or vehicles remaining after the initial extraction from the minefield. The company personnel--</p> <p>a. Reentered the minefield using the same exit routes.</p> <p>b. Detonated the minimum number of mines necessary to remove the vehicles or equipment from the minefield.</p> <p>c. Avoided contact with mines and took all possible precautions to ensure that they were not jarred.</p> <p>d. Placed sandbags near the mines to minimize vehicle and equipment damage.</p> <p>e. Removed mines from the equipment using a line or other remote means, and ensured that all personnel remained at a safe distance.</p> <p>f. Placed explosive charges to minimize vehicle damage when detonating mines on the ground.</p> <p>8. If the position cannot be evacuated, the element personnel clear sufficient mines to allow for mission accomplishment. The element personnel--</p> <p>a. Cleared the communication lanes between the positions.</p> <p>b. Marked the communication lanes between the positions.</p> <p>c. Placed sandbags around mines to prevent injury and damage to the equipment from detonation.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat-service-support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

TASK: Defend Minefield (5-OPFOR-0023)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting a minesweeping operation. The opposing forces (OPFOR) have a minefield placed in the enemy's path. The minefield is under constant observation and fire.

STANDARD: The OPFOR defends a minefield against an enemy element conducting a minesweeping operation. 1. Prevents the unit from detecting the obstacle. 2. Disrupts the minesweeping operations. 3. Prevents the unit from conducting the minefield sweeping operation, prevents the unit from moving all personnel through the breach, or delays the completion of the minefield sweeping operation for more than 45 minutes.

ELEMENTS: S1 SECTION
 S2 SECTION
 S3 SECTION
 S4 SECTION
 BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Disable Critical Equipment and Material (05-3-0210)
 (FM 5-250) (TM 750-244-2) (TM 750-244-3)
 (TM 750-244-6) (TM 750-244-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An enemy assault penetrates the element's position. The element leader is ordered to evacuate the position and disable those items that the platoon cannot haul or move. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element evacuates the position and disables all critical items that cannot be hauled or moved. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The platoon leader prioritizes the equipment to be disabled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used information in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). b. Identified critical equipment as communication (radios and keying material), transportation assets (tracked and wheeled vehicles and construction equipment), barrier material (mines, wire, and explosives), and weapons systems. c. Prioritized the disabling of the equipment based on its value to the enemy. * 2. The platoon leader determines the method for disabling tracked and wheeled vehicles, including the construction equipment, and directs the unit members. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Smashed vital elements, such as the gearbox, the starter, the battery, the engine block, the transmission, the instrument panel, and any of the communications equipment. b. Drained the hydraulic system and cut the hoses. c. Used explosives to disable transportation assets, such as tracked or wheeled vehicles and trailers. d. Used a bayonet or another cutting tool to slash all tires. e. Drained the oil and ran the engine until it seized. * 3. The platoon leader determines the method for disabling the communications equipment and directs the unit members. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Smashed vital elements using an ax, a pick, a sledgehammer, or any heavy implement. Smashed all the dials, knobs, and gauges and demolished all the antennas. b. Used explosives to disable the communications equipment. * 4. The platoon leader determines the amount of barrier material (the mines, the wire, and the explosives) to use and destroys the remaining items with explosives. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. The platoon leader determines the method for disabling an organic bridge with demolitions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Considered whether to use partial or complete destruction. b. Considered the quantity and the type of explosive. c. Considered whether to use an electric or a nonelectric firing system. d. Considered what the appropriate time would be to disable or demolish the bridge. e. Considered the method of coordination to use with adjacent forces. 6. The platoon's members disable critical equipment during the evacuation according to the platoon leader's plan. * 7. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit SOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

ELEMENTS: S1 SECTION
S2 SECTION
S3 SECTION

TASK: Establish Jobsite Security (05-3-0904.05-R01A)
(FM 5-10) (FM 5-34) (FM 71-1)
(FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a tactical mission at an 8-digit grid location. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. This task is performed during darkness and daylight and in all weather conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element establishes local security and tenable defensive positions that provide early warning and protection from an enemy attack. The enemy's presence is not a surprise. The only time restraints are those specified in the FRAGO or OPORD. Digital units submit reports and locations to higher headquarters (HQ) to update the common operational picture (COP) to maintain situational awareness (SA), via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a tactical mission at an 8-digit grid location. The element leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted a mission analysis. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) If a maneuver force was providing security, the element followed procedures beginning with task step 4 below. (2) If the unit was working alone or in an isolated area, the element leader designated overwatch and reconnaissance/minesweeping teams and followed procedures beginning with task step 2 below. b. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance. c. Reviewed the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP). d. Conducted troop-leading procedures. e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). <p>2. The element occupies a stationary overwatch position at the site. The overwatch team leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected a covered and concealed position. b. Assigned a sector of observation and fire (refer to Field Manual [FM] 71-1). c. Directed the overwatch team to use all available sights and other visual devices to scan the sector to identify enemy forces. <p>3. The reconnaissance/minesweeping team secures the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Checked for a possible enemy ambush at the site. b. Located, marked, and reported any mines or unexploded ordnance (UXO) on the site. The chain of command reported the hazard to explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) personnel for disposal. <p>4. The unit moves into and occupies the position after the site is clear.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader reconnoiters tentative fighting positions.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Identified the avenues of approach.</p> <p>b. Identified the observation posts (OP) or patrol routes to secure the perimeter.</p> <p>c. Identified the crew-served weapon positions.</p> <p>d. Established the withdrawal routes.</p> <p>e. Dismounted personnel positions.</p> <p>f. Positioned vehicles in covered and concealed positions.</p> <p>g. Established the sectors of fire and general positions for crew-served weapons and vehicles.</p> <p>h. Designated which fighting positions, OPs, or patrols were manned full time. The patrol or OP team moved to an assigned position. The patrol or OP team--</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(1) Provided early warning and close-in security.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(2) Offered cover and concealment for occupants.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(3) Established a concealed route leading to and away from the OP.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(4) Operated according to the unit's TACSOP or SOP until relieved.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(5) Maintained communications with the command post.</p> <p>i. Supervised the positioning of the chemical alarm.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(1) Placed the alarm 150 meters upwind from the unit.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(2) Ensured that the alarm was within visible site of a position to prevent it from being tampered with by the enemy.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(3) Did not place the alarm in a depression.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(4) Moved the chemical alarm if the wind shifted.</p> <p>j. Subordinate leaders designated individual positions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(1) Designated primary fighting positions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(2) Designated alternate fighting positions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(3) Established sectors of fire for each individual. Ensured that individual range cards and element sector sketches were complete according to the unit's TACSOP or SOP.</p> <p>NOTE: The unit's TACSOP or SOP should have a set time standard for completion of the range cards and sector sketches.</p> <p>k. Maintained communications with the supported maneuver force and higher HQ.</p> <p>l. Emplaced protective obstacles, if required, based on the five-step risk-management process.</p> <p>NOTE: The unit should establish alert procedures and rehearse the procedures on the site with a 100 percent occupation of position.</p> <p>6. The element begins work.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Kept its individual weapons within close reach.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Maintained noise and light discipline.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Maintained camouflage procedures.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Maintained the directed MOPP level.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">e. Maintained communications with the supported maneuver force or higher headquarters.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-4002	SUPERVISE UNIT PREPARATION FOR NBC ATTACK	STP 21-24-SMCT
052-192-3050	DIRECT A MINE SWEEPING TEAM	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG
052-194-3500	CONDUCT A PATROL	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat-service-support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

TASK: Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

STANDARD: Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

STANDARD: The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions (05-5-0302)
 (FM 5-34) (FM 5-103)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The crew must construct its own crew-served weapons fighting position using organic equipment. Digital units have performed functionality checks of all systems. The element leader has selected the location, and the platoon leader has approved the location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The crew constructs crew-served weapon fighting positions providing coverage of the sector of fire and final protective line (FPL) and protection from direct and indirect fire. The position does not restrict the operational capability of the weapon system. Digital units submit reports of their locations and positions via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means, updating the common operational picture (COP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The crew constructs a machine-gun position having a primary and secondary sector of fire; reports intermediate status and completion to the squad leader. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Constructed the position so that the gun fires to the front or oblique (firing across the unit's front), with the oblique being the primary sector of fire. b. Dug the position in an inverted T shape with a firing platform in each corner. c. Used the tripod on the side with the primary sector of fire and the bipod with the secondary sector of fire. d. Used the earth removed during the construction of the position to provide frontal and flank protection if it did not interfere with the sectors of fire. e. Ensured that it was high enough to cover both soldiers when they were operating the weapon. f. Shaped the hole so that both the gunner and the assistant gunner could get to the weapon. g. Reduced the weapon's height by digging the tripod platform down as much as possible, yet keeping the weapon traversable across the entire sector of fire. h. Dug a one-soldier fighting position to the flank for the ammunition bearer when there was a three-soldier crew for a machine gun. The crew connected this position to the gun position by digging a crawl trench. i. Dug the hole to armpit depth and sloped the floor outward toward each end of the hole. j. Dug grenade sumps approximately the width and depth of one entrenching tool at both ends of the hole. k. Built the overhead cover 46 centimeters thick over the middle of the position, when possible. l. Improved the position, if time permitted, by adding cover, digging trenches to adjacent positions, and maintaining camouflage. m. Completed the position in 7 man-hours without overhead cover or 12 man-hours with overhead cover. 2. The crew constructs a machine gun position without a secondary sector of fire; reports intermediate status and completion to the squad leader. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Dug the position in a V shape, with the firing position in the apex of the V. b. Constructed the position following procedures in subtasks 1d to 1k. Completed it in 6 man-hours without overhead cover or 11 man-hours with overhead cover.</p> <p>3. The crew constructs a 90-millimeter recoilless rifle position; reports intermediate status and completion to the squad leader.</p> <p>a. Used earth removed during the construction of the position for frontal and flank protection. However, left both the muzzle-blast and backblast areas clear of obstacles to prevent round deflection, fires, and pressure buildup. The backblast area was cleared of highly combustible material to a distance of 5 meters and was either level or sloping down and away from the position.</p> <p>b. Ensured that it was high enough to cover both soldiers if the crew built cover on the flanks.</p> <p>c. Dug the position to armpit depth and sloped the floor down toward each end of the hole.</p> <p>d. Dug grenade sumps approximately the width and depth of an entrenching tool at each end of the hole.</p> <p>e. Ensured that the position width was narrow enough so that the rear of the weapon extended over the rear of the hole when the soldier firing the rifle stood at the front of the position.</p> <p>f. Improved the position, if time permitted, by digging trenches to adjacent positions and maintaining camouflage.</p> <p>NOTE: Overhead cover is desired only if it protects the crew when they are not firing the weapon (due to the large backblast).</p> <p>g. Completed the position in 6 man-hours.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

STANDARD: Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

STANDARD: The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

TASK: Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
093-403-5010	RECOGNIZE MILITARY EXPLOSIVE ORDNANCE BY TYPE	STP 21-24-SMCT
093-403-5020	TAKE IMMEDIATE ACTION BASED ON CONFIRMATION OF AN EXPLOSIVE HAZARD	STP 21-24-SMCT
093-403-5030	REPORT EXPLOSIVE HAZARD	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Use Passive Air-Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A)
 (FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-80)
 (FM 44-80)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is in a tactical position. Hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) have been operating in the general area. The platoon's weapon control status (WCS) is WEAPONS HOLD. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The opposing forces (OPFOR) aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) do not detect the unit. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 or blackout conditions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The unit leader uses passive air-defense measures in a tactical position. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, and dispersion) to hide the personnel and the equipment to limit vulnerability. Air situational awareness (SA) was achieved by the unit's monitoring of the simplified handheld terminal units (SHTUs). b. Covered or shaded any shiny items, particularly windshields and optics. c. Established and rehearsed the air-attack alarms. d. Dispersed vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to air attack. e. Constructed field fortifications with organic equipment as necessary to protect the personnel and the vulnerable mission-essential equipment. f. Manned observation posts (OPs), daytime or nighttime, to provide warning of approaching aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs). g. Established a listening watch on the air-defense early-warning net, if the equipment was available and operational. * 2. The unit leader uses passive air-defense measures in a convoy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that all personnel received the convoy commander's briefing. b. Camouflaged the vehicles and the equipment before moving out. c. Selected column interval based on the instructions, the mission, and the terrain. d. Placed crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover the avenues of approach (front, rear, and flank). e. Assigned soldiers to air-guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360 degrees. f. Identified threat aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) visually. g. Reported all aircraft actions to the higher headquarters (HQ). h. Established and rehearsed the air-attack alarms. 3. Unit personnel use passive air-defense measures when occupying or displacing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained the vehicle interval specified in the movement order. b. Staggered vehicles to avoid linear patterns. c. Assigned air guards to the sectors of search that covered 360 degrees, and maintained the coverage until the convoy completed the movement. d. Identified threat aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) visually. e. Reported all aircraft actions to the higher HQ. f. Established the vehicle order of precedence. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: CMD SECTION
 S1 SECTION
 S2 SECTION
 S3 SECTION
 S4 SECTION
 BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Take Active Combined-Arms Air-Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A)
 (FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)
 (FM 44-80)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives early warning of aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) in the area. The unit personnel detect unknown or hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs). The unit is in a tactical position. The weapon control status (WCS) is WEAPONS TIGHT. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit destroys or forces attacking aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) away from friendly positions. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 or blackout conditions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The leaders direct combined-arms air-defense measures against the hostile aerial platforms not attacking a stationary unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Gave the air-attack alarm. b. Organized the unit to defensive positions. c. Ordered a search of the assigned sectors for aerial platforms. d. Identified and reported the presence of aerial platforms in the area and sent priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to the higher headquarters (HQ). <p>NOTE: When making the decision of whether or not to fire at nonattacking hostile aerial platforms with small arms, take into consideration the assigned mission and the tactical situation. The unit must positively and visually identify aerial platforms prior to engaging with small arms, unless the aircraft is committing a hostile act.</p> <p>DANGER: Munitions cannot distinguish between friend and foe. Review all airspace control measures. You must perform all precautionary measures to ensure that the munitions you fire do not cause injury or death to friendly forces or damage to the allied equipment. Even computerized systems require close observation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Made the engagement decision. f. Engaged the unit in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns. <p>NOTE: Expect the firing signature from small arms to disclose the unit's position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> g. Performed all precautionary measures to ensure that no fratricide occurred during the engagement. h. Directed the personnel to reload their weapons following the engagement. i. Sent the PIRs to the higher HQ. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTES:</p> <p>(1) The aim points for the propeller-driven aircraft are the same as for the helicopters.</p> <p>(2) Select the aim points in football field lengths: one football field equals approximately 91 meters.</p> <p>(3) Once the lead distance is estimated, the riflemen and the machine gunners aim and fire their weapons at the aim point until the aircraft has flown past that point. Maintain the aim point, not the lead distance. The weapon should not move once the firing cycle starts.</p> <p>(4) Establish the preselected aim points when the unit is in a static position.</p> <p>(5) Accuracy in relation to target hits is not necessary. Accuracy in relation to the aim point is necessary. Volume fire, a coordinated high-volume of fire that the aircraft has to fly through, will achieve the desired results.</p> <p>TYPE AERIAL PLATFORMS COURSE AIM POINT</p> <p>Jet/Cruise Missile Crossing Two football fields in front of aerial platform nose</p> <p>Jet/Cruise Missile Overhead Two football fields in front of aerial platform nose</p> <p>Jet/Cruise Missile Directly at you Slightly above aerial platforms nose</p> <p>Helicopter/UAV Crossing One-half football field in front of nose</p> <p>Helicopter/UAV Directly at you Slightly above helicopter/UAV body</p> <p>Helicopter/UAV Hovering Slightly above helicopter/UAV body</p> <p> j. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit's position as directed by the unit commander.</p> <p>* 2. The leaders direct small arms air-defense measures against the hostile aerial platforms not attacking a moving target.</p> <p> a. Gave the air-attack alarm.</p> <p> b. Dispersed vehicles laterally and in-depth, or had the vehicle operators continue to move the unit.</p> <p> c. Moved vehicles to covered, concealed positions. All personnel not assigned crew-served weapons dismounted and prepared to engage the aircraft or increased dispersion.</p> <p> d. Engaged the nonattacking aircraft only as directed.</p> <p> e. Identified the threat aerial platforms visually.</p> <p> f. Reported all aerial platforms action to the higher HQ.</p> <p> g. Prepared the unit to engage on the orders of the senior leader.</p> <p> h. Engaged the unit (when ordered to do so by the senior leader) in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms.</p> <p> i. Directed personnel to reload their weapons following the engagement of aircraft.</p> <p>* 3. The leaders direct combined-arms air-defense measures against the aerial platforms attacking a stationary unit.</p> <p> a. Gave the air-attack alarm.</p> <p> b. Engaged all available personnel immediately in attacking the aerial platforms per the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).</p> <p> c. Directed personnel to reload their weapons following the engagement.</p> <p> d. Ensured that personnel assigned to observation posts (OPs) continued to scan their assigned sectors.</p> <p> e. Reported any aircraft action to the higher HQ.</p> <p> f. Reported any casualties to the higher HQ.</p> <p> g. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit's position as directed by the tactical situation or the TSOP.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 4. The unit leader, or noncommissioned officers (NCOs), directs small arms air-defense measures during the convoy movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Alerted vehicle commanders of an impending attack. b. Dispersed vehicles alternately to the shoulders of the road, or off the road if possible. Turned to covered, concealed positions, if the terrain permitted. c. Maintained vehicle intervals, or increased the interval or dispersion. The vehicle operators used evasive driving techniques. d. Ordered the unit to dismount and take up firing positions. e. Prepared personnel to fire on the orders of the senior individual present or automatically returned fire (per engagement procedures) if an aircraft was attacking. f. Identified the aerial platforms. g. Engaged the unit in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns. h. Directed personnel to reload their weapons following the attack. i. Reported the attack and submitted the PIR to the higher HQ. j. Reported any casualties to the higher HQ. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Perform Risk-Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A)
 (AR 385-10) (FM 100-5) (FM 25-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is deployed performing its combat mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All leaders and soldiers are aware of all potential safety problems inherent in the conduct of the task. The company trains to standard and does not take shortcuts that endanger unit members. All risks taken are necessary to accomplish the training objectives. Appropriate measures are taken to minimize risks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander identifies the risk or safety hazards.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Analyzed the operation plan (OPLAN), the fragmentary order (FRAGO), and the operation order (OPORD) for the specified and implied missions (tasks). b. Integrated safety into every phase of the planning process. c. Assessed the risks before issuing a FRAGO when the missions or conditions changed. <p>* 2. The leaders evaluate the risk or safety hazards identified in the operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Compared the risk to the acceptable level of risk in the commander's intent based on the stated training objective. b. Determined the likelihood of equipment and personnel losses from accidents. c. Described the operation in terms of high-, medium-, or low-risk. d. Prepared courses of action (COAs) that minimized accidental losses. <p>* 3. The commander, or leaders, eliminates or reduces the risk or safety hazards.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Chose a COA that maximized the operation and minimized the risk. b. Developed procedures that reduced the risk or safety hazards. c. Prescribed the safety or protective equipment. d. Briefed the elements prior to all of the operations. <p>4. The element carries out the safety procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received safety briefings prior to all of the operations. b. Practiced the safety procedures during all of the mission rehearsals. c. Made on-the-spot safety corrections. 		
<p>NOTES:</p> <p>1. Safety is a part of realism-- and realism includes building safety into the training so that safe practices, which eliminate accidents, become second nature during war (refer to Field Manual [FM] 25-100).</p> <p>2. Risk: FM 100-5 emphasizes the need for boldness and that commanders must take "risks and tenaciously press soldiers and systems" as an imperative of the Air-Land Battle. However, such an imperative is founded on the premise that protecting the force to the maximum extent possible ensures winning the battle. Formally, risk is an expression of possible loss over a specific period of time or number of operational cycles as defined by the Center for Army Safety.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Coordinate for Medical Services (05-1-0050)
 (FM 8-10) (FM 8-10-1) (FM 8-10-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is conducting continuous tactical operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All leaders know where to receive medical support and know evacuation procedures. Subunits can identify the location of medical facilities/services. Medical support is available at all times. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The commander determines medical support requirements based on-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. The battalion mission. b. The projected company missions. c. Requests from subordinate and supporting units. 2. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) requests medical support from the brigade S3 or supported unit. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requested at least one physician assistant. b. Ensured number of medics needed. c. Ensured dates and time periods medical personnel are needed. d. Ensured location and time medical personnel will link up with the unit. e. Ensured special equipment the medics need to bring. 3. The battalion S3 coordinates for pick up, and assigns medics. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assigned medics to companies based on mission. b. Established support relationship. c. Coordinated time and linkup of medics with the unit they will support. 4. The headquarters (HQ) company commander or first sergeant (1SG) plans for the treatment and evacuation of casualties. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established sick call procedures in accordance with (IAW) the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). b. Located medical facilities and medical supply points in the area of operation. c. Planned casualty treatment operations with the assistance of the medic. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Designated a casualty collection point. (2) Designated evacuation routes. (3) Planned for the security of the casualty collection point. (4) Ensured aid and litter teams were designated by all elements. d. Identified and disseminated evacuation procedures, to include-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) procedures. (2) Routes. (3) Vehicle to be used as ambulances. (4) Location of medical facilities. (5) Information in all operation orders (OPORD). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. Battalion personnel and medics administer first aid to wounded personnel and evacuate casualties to the collection point. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Caused no further injury during evacuation. b. Used poleless or improvised (poncho) litter. c. Employed the one- or two-man carry method. 6. The HQ company 1SG, designated noncommissioned officer (NCO) or medic effects casualty evacuation from the collection point to the medical facility. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the nearest medical facility to which the casualty was evacuated. b. Contacted the medical facility where the casualty was being transported. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensured the facility could accommodate the casualty. (2) Provided all available medical information regarding the casualty. (3) Requested advice regarding special measures taken prior to and during evacuation. c. Evacuated nonthreatening injuries by ground ambulance. d. Evacuated life threatening injuries by helicopter using MEDEVAC procedures as outlined in the company's SOP. e. Caused no further injuries during evacuation. f. Retained all classified materials (signal operation instruction [SOI], maps, orders, overlays) and weapons in the casualty custody. 7. The commander notifies higher HQ of casualties. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided casualty name, rank, and medical condition. b. Reported the facility to which the soldier was evacuated. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

STANDARD: Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Conduct Logistics Operations (05-1-1000)
 (FM 10-27-4) (AR 220-15) (AR 710-2)
 (DA PAM 710-2-1) (FM 101-5) (FM 10-23)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has deployed to a field location. The Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) section is operational and has all required plans, standing operating procedures (SOPs), forms, manuals, and equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The S4 section provides logistical support for continuous operations without degrading the battalion's ability to perform the mission due to inadequate logistics operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The S4 section maintains Department of the Army (DA) Form 1594 (Daily Staff Journal), according to Army Regulation (AR) 220-15. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Opened and closed the journal daily in accordance with (IAW) the unit's SOP. b. Made entries pertaining to significant events, information, messages, and documents. c. Reviewed the entries for correctness. 2. The S4 section serves as the primary staff section for logistical support. AR 710-2, DA Pam 710-2-1, and the section's SOP are used as guidelines. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided detailed information on supply matters. b. Supervised and monitored the requisition, receipt, storage, and distribution of supplies and equipment (except Class VIII items). c. Supervised and monitored property accounting procedures. d. Planned and supervised the execution of the logistics and the service support portion of plans and orders. e. Supervised and monitored supply and maintenance records procedures. f. Prepared forecasts for Class III and Class V items and maintained data on their use. g. Coordinated with the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) for training of supply personnel. h. Maintained the battalion property book. i. Established material storage areas containing vehicle turnarounds. j. Camouflaged areas according to the tactical situation. 3. The S4 section serves as the principal staff section for services. Field Manual (FM) 10-23 is used as a guideline. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained and monitored food-service operations. b. Coordinated field-feeding operations. c. Prepared the battalion feeding plan. d. Inspected field-feeding operations for enforcement of the sanitation regulations. 4. The S4 section serves as the principal staff section for other supply actions according to standards listed below. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Made arrangements for the receipt, storage, and issue of organizational clothing and individual equipment.</p> <p>b. Coordinated and monitored unit laundry-support services.</p> <p>c. Selected the general location of service-support areas.</p> <p>d. Coordinated and monitored the use of clothing exchange and bath points.</p> <p>e. Maintained data on the number of personnel requiring services and the dates and times services were offered.</p> <p>f. Designated collection points for salvage turn-in.</p> <p>g. Controlled the disposition of salvage.</p> <p>h. Coordinated the transportation of deceased personnel.</p> <p>i. Ensured all quartermaster items issued to the unit were on hand and serviceable.</p> <p>* 5. The battalion maintenance officer (BMO) serves as the principal staff officer for maintenance through the S4 section.</p> <p>a. Supervised the battalion maintenance program.</p> <p>b. Monitored maintenance operations and equipment status.</p> <p>c. Reviewed unit status reports and material condition reports.</p> <p>d. Conducted spot-check inspections.</p> <p>e. Prepared the logistics portion of the unit status report.</p> <p>f. Reviewed and supervised the prescribed load list (PLL) and DA Form 3318 for Class IX repair parts.</p> <p>g. Coordinated for the recovery and evacuation of unserviceable or unrepairable battalion vehicles.</p> <p>h. Monitored the distribution and storage of repair parts and maintenance supplies.</p> <p>i. Established maintenance priorities and monitored the controlled exchange program.</p> <p>j. Estimated the maintenance impact of planned operations.</p> <p>k. Monitored the Army Oil Analysis Program (AOAP) and the calibration program.</p> <p>6. The S4 section, with the assistance of the BMO, conducts supply transactions using FM 10-27-4 as a guide.</p> <p>a. Coordinated, controlled, and supervised the turn-in of supplies and equipment.</p> <p>NOTES: 1. Inspected equipment for serviceability or repairs. 2. Ensured that all unit maintenance is performed. 3. Ensured that required fluids are drained and equipment is cleaned consistent with the supporting supply activity's SOP. 4. Ensured that all required forms are prepared reflecting equipment turn-in.</p> <p>b. Coordinated, controlled, and supervised the issues of supplies and equipment.</p> <p>NOTES: 1. Inspected equipment. 2. Conducted a complete inventory. 3. Serviced and tested equipment. 4. Prepared all required forms reflecting issue and receipt of supplies and equipment.</p> <p>7. The S4 section serves as the principal staff section for the transportation requirements.</p> <p>a. Provided the movement officer for the battalion.</p> <p>b. Developed and maintained the unit movement plan and SOP for all modes of transportation based on the operation plan (OPLAN).</p> <p>c. Ensured movement plans included:</p> <p>(1) Vehicle preparation.</p> <p>(2) Load plans.</p> <p>(3) Personnel processing procedures.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Security procedures. (5) Duties and responsibilities of unit personnel. d. Updated the movement and load plans when changes to modification table of organization and equipment (MTOE) were approved. e. Coordinated with the S3 to determine the priorities for movement. f. Reviewed and coordinated the movement and load plans of subordinate units. g. Determined transportation requirements for the move and submitted requests for external transportation. h. Obtained road clearance for movement.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Coordinate for Food-Service Support (05-2-0051)
 (FM 10-23) (AR 30-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company does not have an organic mess capability. Coordination for food-service support is required. The unit is conducting continuous tactical operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit coordinates for three nutritious meals daily for all assigned and attached soldiers. Soldiers do not miss meals because of coordination lapses. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The company commander or food-service officer (FSO) determines the daily feeding plan. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined personnel strength, including attached and supporting personnel. b. Identified locations and times for meals. Developed a distribution plan to support the mission. c. Considered consolidation of subunits. d. Determined the type of rations based on mission constraints, that is A-, T- or meal, ready-to-eat (MRE) rations. 2. The company commander or FSO requests and coordinates for meals as required. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepared a feeding report and forwarded the report to the brigade Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identified the nature of the requirement. (2) Established the date the meals were required. (3) Determined the total number of meals required. (4) Established the time of pick up or delivery of the meals. (5) Determined the location of the units needing delivery. b. Informed the brigade S4 of any changes that would affect the operation. Maintained a tolerance of plus or minus 5 percent of the total head count for hot meals. c. Coordinated the times and locations for pick up or delivery. c. Submitted requests for hot meals at least 8 hours prior to the meal, if possible. 3. The FSO supervises Class I operations. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Followed the company's standing operating procedure (SOP) for the tactical feeding plan. b. Served the hot meals as soon after pickup or delivery as possible. c. Set up a one-way staggered serving line (one line on each side of the central distribution site) if in danger of being attacked. c. Ensured that all soldiers had their mess kits available, if used. d. Set up a one-way straight serving line (one line on each side of the central distribution site) if attack was unlikely. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Dispersed the serving line in 5-meter (17-foot) intervals to reduce casualty potential. f. Ensured that soldiers dispersed while eating to prevent mass casualties from an enemy attack. g. Established washing facilities. h. Disposed of all trash/garbage properly. 4. The company commander ensures that proper field sanitation measures are followed. 5. The FSO ensures that proper signature head-count and cash-collection procedures are used during the tactical operation. NOTE: One-line entries may be authorized during training in the field where the collection of signatures is impractical as determined by the company commander or FSO (for example, limited feeding time, troop dispersion, or weather conditions). 6. The company commander ensures that the food containers are promptly returned and all trash/garbage is properly disposed of.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat-service-support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

TASK: Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

STANDARD: Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

STANDARD: The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Conduct Combat Refueling Operations (05-2-1024)
(FM 10-67-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: A unit is conducting refueling operations. The unit to be refueled has selected and secured a refueling area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit refuels the vehicles without affecting ongoing operations. The time required to conduct this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The executive officer (XO) or the first sergeant (1SG) organizes a refueling operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with the next higher supply activity for a bulk-fuel supply, according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). b. Established a refueling schedule for engineer equipment (high-consumption vehicles). Modified the schedule, as needed, to ensure that the company accomplished critical missions. c. Coordinated with supporting units for additional refueling support, as needed. d. Selected a refueling point centralized to the work sites. The refueling point had good cover or concealment locations and good entrance and exit routes. 2. Refueling personnel support the unit according to the established schedule. 3. Refueling personnel establish the fuel point. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Grounded the fuel truck using the procedures specified in the appropriate technical manual (TM). b. Positioned fire extinguishers in a readily available location. c. Established traffic-control patterns to minimize congestion. 4. Company personnel conduct the refueling operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Turned off the vehicle's engines. b. Grounded the fuel truck to the refueling vehicle. c. Issued packaged petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) items, as needed. d. Maintained dispersion, basing the spacing on the terrain; at a minimum, maintained spacing of 50 meters. e. Maintained noise and light discipline. f. Observed safety procedures. * 5. The XO or the 1SG coordinates for bulk refueling for the fuel truck. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the location of the bulk refueling point. b. Coordinated for additional bulk refueling, if needed. c. Restocked onboard packaged POL items. * 6. Company leaders monitor the refueling process. * 7. The XO or the 1SG updates the fuel forecast with the battalion task force (TF) Supply Officer (US Army) (S4). 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Plan/Direct Aerial Logistics Operations (05-3-1054)
(FM 90-4) (FM 1-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company has been conducting combat operations in support of a maneuver infantry battalion. The unit needs additional supplies and material to sustain combat operations and provide continuous support to the maneuver elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company staff determines logistical support necessary to sustain operations and is prepared to receive aerial resupply at the time and location specified. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The company staff (commander, executive officer (XO), first sergeant (1SG), supply sergeant) determines logistical support necessary to sustain operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Analyzed current and future missions with input from key noncommissioned officers (NCOs) and leaders and determined anticipated ammunition, supply, and material requirements. b. Determined the type and quantity of supplies to be requested. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Compared requirements with existing inventories. (2) Considered the resupply timetable. (3) Reviewed logistic status (LOGSTAT) reports and supply requests. * 2. The commander selects the drop zone (DZ)/landing zone (LZ). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the location was near the unit command post (CP) and was defensible. b. Ensured that landing aircraft would not pose additional risk to the helicopter or crew. c. Ensured that the location was secure from enemy direct and indirect fire. d. Ensured that the supplies could be transported by personnel and/or equipment away from the site quickly. e. Ensured that the DZ/LZ was large enough to accommodate incoming aircraft and supplies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) 35 meters in diameter during the daytime and 50 meters in diameter during the night time for observation helicopters (OHs) and utility helicopters (UHs). (2) 100 meters long and 35 meters wide during the daytime and 150 meters long and 100 meters wide during the night for cargo helicopter (CH). 3. The commander designates a reconnaissance element to conduct a reconnaissance of the selected LZ, if the resupply aircraft must land or the loads are externally rigged, and ensures that it meets the following criteria (based on factors of the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian consideration (METT-TC): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verified that the DZ/LZ could accommodate resupply with minimal effort. b. Ensured that the DZ/LZ met the following criteria: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensured that the area was large enough to allow the aircraft to maneuver (LZ only). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Ensured that it could be easily identified from the air. (3) Secured from enemy direct and indirect fire. (4) Secured by a company-size element. (5) Located to the unit's location, objective, or route. (6) Ensured that the surface was firm enough to support the weight of the resupply aircraft (LZ only). (7) Freed of tree stumps or other objects that could puncture the bottom of the aircraft or damage sling-loaded cargo. Marked items that could not be removed with panel markers, red lights, or other field expedient markers. (8) Ensured that the LZ was free of loose debris that could damage aircraft engines. (9) Ensured that the ground slope was less than 8 degrees (LZ only). (10) Ensured that the approach and departure ends of the LZ were free of tall trees, telephone lines, power lines, or similar obstacles that could interfere with aircraft landings or liftoffs. An obstacle ratio of 10 to 1 was used; that is, a landing point required 100 feet of horizontal clearance from a 10-foot-tall tree if the aircraft must approach or depart directly over the tree. c. Determined the amount of engineer assets required to prepare the LZ/DZ. d. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army (S3) for indirect fire support at the LZ/DZ if needed. <p>4. The XO requests aerial resupply.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepared the request with the following information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Delivery time. (2) Location of the DZ/LZ. (3) Desired method (airdropped or air landed). (4) Type and quantity of supplies. b. Submitted the request to the battalion Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) section. <p>5. The company commander organizes the company to receive aerial supply.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designated elements to secure the LZ or DZ. b. Designated a recovery and distribution element. <p>6. The company security element secures the LZ or DZ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Searched the area to ensure that it was free of the enemy. b. Established mutually supporting positions that provided observation, cover, concealment, fields of fire, and cover for the most likely mounted and dismounted avenues of approach to the LZ or DZ. c. Ensured that the positions were far enough out to provide early warning of enemy actions. d. Employed hasty obstacles, as required (for example, claymore mines and roadblocks). <p>7. The company commander--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the operational area to the platoon leader in charge of the recovery and distribution element. b. Identified the load impact or helicopter landing point. c. Identified a distribution point for the supplies. <p>8. The company prepares the LZ or DZ, after the area has been secured.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Removed all obstacles, if possible, and marked those which could not be easily seen during the day. The company used red panels or other easily seen objects over the obstruction during daylight; used red lights at night. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Removed loose debris at the LZ which could have damaged rotor blades or aircraft engines. c. Marked the load impact area or helicopter landing point in a manner identified by the commander (for example, smoke, lights, VS-17 panels, field expedient markers). 9. The company recovery and distribution team receives the supplies immediately on delivery. a. Moved quickly to the aircraft or airdropped load. b. Unloaded the aircraft, divided the load (if required), and moved it to the distribution point. c. Concealed the LZ or DZ by removing any items that could have identified its use for resupply, such as recovering markers, covering aircraft tracks, and removing rigging material and equipment. *10. The company commander controls the breakdown of the supplies at the distribution point according to the allocation plan. a. Ensured that supplies were distributed tactically. b. Ensured that security was maintained throughout the operation. c. Ensured that the unit continued its mission. *11. The commander reports receipt of the supplies to higher headquarters (HQs) on completion of the delivery operation and disposes of the salvaged containers, parachutes, cargo nets, and pallets according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat-service-support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

TASK: Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

STANDARD: Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

- ELEMENTS:** CMD SECTION
 S1 SECTION
 S2 SECTION
 S3 SECTION
 S4 SECTION
 BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Conduct Battlefield Stress-Reduction and Stress-Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A)
 (FM 22-51)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Combat-health-support (CHS) operations have commenced. Unit personnel are deployed in support of higher headquarters (HQ) operations. The unit's sleep plan and the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) to manage battle fatigue (BF) soldiers have been developed. Personnel have been cross-trained on critical tasks. Operations are continuous over a prolonged period of time causing stressful situations for personnel. The commander has directed that battlefield stress-management procedures be implemented. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available.

NOTE: Due to the technical knowledge and skills required to perform some military occupational specialty (MOS)-specific tasks, caution must be exercised when cross-training personnel. For instance, nonmedical personnel cannot be cross-trained to perform MOS-specific medical tasks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit applies techniques that counter battlefield stress. At mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4, performance degradation factors increase the need for stress-prevention implementation. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The commander and leaders perform stress-prevention leader actions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level. b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situation. c. Briefed the leader's intention to all unit personnel. d. Spoke positively concerning the unit's missions, purpose, and abilities. e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit. f. Instituted an information-dissemination plan designed to quell and prevent rumors. g. Informed personnel of the availability of religious support. * 2. The commander and leaders implement the sleep plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities. b. Adjusted the sleep plan as dictated by the tactical situation. c. Enforced the sleep plan according to the TSOP. * 3. The leaders implement task rotation or restructuring procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Alternated cross-trained unit personnel on critical tasks, as required. b. Rotated unit personnel between demanding and nondemanding tasks. c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Adjusted task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation.</p> <p>* 4. The leaders implement stress-coping and stress-management techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Integrated new unit members into the unit immediately. b. Assisted soldiers in resolving home-front problems. c. Implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or BF among soldiers and leaders. d. Provided instruction on relaxation techniques to all personnel prior to deployment. e. Conducted after-action debriefings. f. Scheduled a critical-event debriefing after any especially traumatic event according to FM 22-51. g. Conducted unit award, decoration, recognition, and memorial ceremonies. <p>* 5. The commander and leaders implement stress-control techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Implemented a plan to deal with mild, seriously stressed, or BF cases. b. Assigned soldiers showing signs of severe stress or BF to simple tasks. c. Directed personnel to be supportive of stressed or BF soldiers. d. Referred soldiers showing signs of serious stress or BF to the supporting medical treatment facility (MTF) for evaluation. e. Reintegrated return-to-duty (RTD) soldiers into their specific element. <p>6. Unit personnel employ stress-prevention measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained a positive attitude concerning the unit's mission, purpose, and abilities. b. Complied with the commander's sleep plan. c. Identified other soldiers with signs of stress or BF. d. Provided immediate buddy-aid support. e. Reported signs of stress or BF in other soldiers to their immediate supervisor. f. Accepted new unit members immediately. g. Practiced relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places. h. Participated in buddy systems and after-action debriefings. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: CMD SECTION
 BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Perform Field-Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A)
 (FM 21-10) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)
 (AR 40-5) (FM 21-10-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Health hazards exist, which require field-sanitation measures. The unit is in the field without permanent sanitation or water facilities. The commander has selected and trained the unit's field-sanitation team (FST). The combat health support (CHS) plan, the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP), and higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. All required sanitation equipment is available. Field-sanitation measures are continuous and are performed simultaneously with other operational tasks. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Field-sanitation measures are accomplished according to the TSOP, the OPORD, and Field Manual (FM) 21-10. The FST performs field-sanitation measures according to the TSOP, FM 21-10, FM 21-10-1, and the commander's guidance. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, only minimum-essential field-sanitation activities are performed.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander directs field-sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed field-sanitation activities to counter the medical threat. b. Monitored field-sanitation activities for compliance with FM 21-10, FM 21-10-1, and the TSOP. c. Enforced individual field-sanitation measures. d. Requested assistance from the supporting preventive medicine (PVNTMED) element for sanitation problems that were beyond the expertise of the unit's FST according to the TSOP and the OPORD. e. Corrected field-sanitation deficiencies. f. Reported field-sanitation deficiencies that could not be corrected by unit personnel to the FST. g. Enforced safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TSOP. h. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TSOP. <p>2. The FST supervises unit field-sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained field-sanitation basic load according to AR 40-5 and FM 21-10-1. b. Supervised the distribution of field-sanitation basic load items according to AR 40-5 and FM 21-10-1. c. Tested the unit's water supply for required chlorine residual level according to FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP. d. Inspected the water containers and trailers according to FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP. e. Monitored personnel to ensure that they used personal protective measures against arthropods (skin, clothing, and bed-net repellent) and rodents according to applicable directives and the commander's guidance. f. Conducted rodent surveys, as required. g. Monitored personnel for employment of correct hygiene measures. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. Monitored waste facilities and procedures for compliance with AR 40-5, FM 21-10-1, and the TSOP, as required. i. Inspected latrines and urinals according to FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP. j. Inspected liquid and solid waste-disposal facilities to ensure their compliance with AR 40-5, FM 21-10-1, and the TSOP. k. Inspected hand-washing devices according to FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP. l. Inspected the transport, storage, preparation, and service of food for compliance with FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP. m. Provided advice, recommendations, and training requirements to the commander. n. Enforced safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TSOP. o. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TSOP. <p>3. Unit personnel employ field-sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained the prescribed load of water purification materials according to AR 40-5, FM 21-10, and the TSOP. b. Prepared nonpotable water for personal use according to FM 21-10 and the TSOP. c. Consumed only water designated as potable. d. Maintained latrines and hand-washing facilities according to FM 21-10 and the TSOP. e. Employed preventive measures against cold and heat injuries. f. Employed personal-hygiene measures. g. Employed preventive measures against arthropod and rodent infestation, to include using skin, clothing, and bed-net repellent. h. Reported field-sanitation deficiencies to the FST. i. Employed safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TSOP. j. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TSOP. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-0319.05-T01A)
 (FM 10-27-1) (FM 10-27-2) (FM 10-500-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Since the normal supply-support transportation is unavailable, supplies and equipment are requested by airdrop.

NOTE: An airdrop of supplies and equipment may be preplanned or immediate. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Supplies, equipment, and rigging gear are derigged and recovered. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The company requests supplies and equipment by airdrop. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the required supplies and equipment. b. Identified the drop zone (DZ). c. Determined the date and time of the airdrop request. d. Forwarded the request for a preplanned or immediate airdrop to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4). * 2. The company commander and the element leaders develop the airdrop supply and equipment receipt plan. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designated a recovery officer and a safety officer. b. Verified the delivery time and location with the S4. c. Coordinated the survey of the DZ or area of operations (AO) with the pathfinders, the combat-control team (CCT), or the drop-zone support team (DZST), through the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). d. Prepared the recovery and alternate plans. e. Identified the number of people, equipment, and vehicles required for the recovery of supplies and equipment. f. Coordinated the transportation and materials-handling-equipment (MHE) support with the S4. g. Briefed personnel on the tactical situation and the recovery and alternative plans. 3. The company receives supplies and equipment. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Secured the DZ or AO. b. Derigged the supplies and equipment. c. Recorded shortages. d. Identified the damaged items. e. Evacuated the supplies and equipment. f. Retrieved the airdrop rigging equipment. g. Buried or destroyed the airdrop rigging equipment that could not be removed. h. Inspected the DZ to make certain that no serviceable airdrop equipment was left behind. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Forwarded the airdrop equipment to the nearest collection point or other location as directed by the S4.		
j. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to the S2 or S3 and the S4.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S3 SECTION

TASK: Install and Operate a Radio Teletypewriter (RATT) Set (11-5-0081.05-T01A)
 (FM 24-17) (AR 380-40)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The team is tactically deployed. All equipment, including the appropriate keying material, the teletypewriter-traffic diagram chart, and Department of Defense (DD) Form 577, is available for the operator. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The team establishes and sustains tactical teletypewriter operations according to the signal operation instructions (SOI) and maintains communications security (COMSEC) at all times. The teletypewriter equipment is installed and operational within 45 minutes, or within 1 hour and 30 minutes in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The team installs the teletypewriter equipment. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Positioned the equipment to relay communications traffic and to operate at extended distances to support unit relocation and rapid tactical movement. Placed the equipment on high ground offering concealment for the ground unit and providing a direct line of sight between the receiving and transmitting antennas. b. Established physical security for the classified equipment, materials, and areas to safeguard against access by unauthorized persons. Persons having a need to know and possessing a security clearance equal to the classification level of the COMSEC material are authorized access to the communications area. c. Interconnected all of the teletypewriter-required equipment according to the appropriate technical manual (TM). d. Programmed the cryptographic (crypto) equipment to encrypt and decrypt. e. Grounded the equipment as outlined in the appropriate manual. f. Connected the teletypewriter to the power source and applied power. g. Performed a final check of all the equipment connections and switch functions. Checked the frequency for transmitting and receiving. 2. The team operates the teletypewriter terminal. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established message-handling and message-processing procedures to include classification, format, and disposition according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). b. Established contact with stations using the teletypewriter-traffic diagram chart. c. Requested permission to enter the net. Required authentication from stations before transmitting or receiving messages. d. Provided a receipt for all messages that were properly prepared for transmission. Returned improperly prepared messages to the originator. 3. The team processes messages and maintains communication records and reports. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained accountability for outgoing traffic on Department of the Army (DA) Form 4016. b. Processed and proofread the DD Form 173/1 or the DA Form 4004 for transmission. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Performed a channel check and required authentication. d. Transmitted the message. e. Entered incoming traffic on DA Form 5651.</p> <p>4. The team maintains internal security. a. Ensured that only authorized couriers, messengers, or personnel with a valid DD Form 577, signed for incoming traffic. b. Maintained an up-to-date DD Form 577 file. c. Maintained COMSEC accountability by completing DA Form 2653-R. d. Treated any waste generated during the message processing as classified and secured it until it was destroyed according to the unit's SOP.</p> <p>5. The team performs messenger service. a. Established primary and alternate routes to the message origination points supported by the teletypewriter terminal. b. Coordinated pickup and delivery times for messenger service. c. Determined the message delivery means (foot or vehicle courier). d. Used receipts to maintain message control and accountability for deliveries. e. Provided a 24-hour messenger service when required.</p> <p>* 6. The team performs COMSEC accountability. a. Performed an inventory of the assigned COMSEC material according to Army Regulation (AR) 380-40 and the unit's SOP. b. Inventoried and accepted (signed for) newly received COMSEC material. c. Destroyed and documented the destruction of superseded materials as soon as possible or no later than 72 hours after their supersession. d. Maintained physical, transmission, and crypto security at all times to protect the contents of the messages. (See subtask 1b).</p> <p>7. The team performs preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the teletypewriter equipment, using the operator's manual as a guide.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A)
 (FM 24-19) (TC 24-20) (TM 11-3895-203-15)
 (TM 11-5805-262-12) (TM 11-5805-294-12)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) and a briefing on the size and shape of the facility or supported command post (CP), the location of each element, the required instruments, and the installation priority. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The internal communications network is set up according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) or the commander's guidance, and is operational by the time specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The section leader prepares a telephone cable or wire installation plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected a wire route (based on a map study) that met the requirements of the tactical situation and was easy to construct and maintain. b. Selected the most direct primary and alternate wire routes after conducting a ground reconnaissance. c. Prepared an interim plan indicating the routes of the wire lines. d. Allocated the manpower and materials to accomplish the task. e. Prepared a telephone-traffic diagram showing the number of telephone circuits in the communications system. f. Prepared a telephone directory according to the signal operation instructions (SOI)/signal supplemental instructions (SSI). Included the names and numbers of the telephone-system users. <p>2. The section installs a telephone switchboard (SB).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected the equipment for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and the appropriate technical manual (TM). Used the end-item list if no packing list was available. b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, packing box, or ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from the elements. c. Laid the SB on its side with the nameplate up. d. Grounded the equipment using proper grounding techniques according to the appropriate TM. e. Performed SB preoperation procedures according to the appropriate TM. f. Labeled the SB according to the traffic diagram. g. Connected the local and trunk wire lines. <p>3. The section installs internal wiring and telephones.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Installed the distribution box. b. Tested the field cable or wire before installing. c. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the communications section leader. d. Secured the field wire at all the starting points and at any changes of direction to reduce the strain. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Used proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points. f. Tagged the wire ties. g. Used the terrain and vegetation to enhance concealment. h. Ensured that all overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads. i. Finished the line-route map indicating the routes of wire lines, SBs, switching centrals, and test stations; the number of circuits along a route; and the type of wire construction. 4. The section operates the telephone SB. a. Tested the SB to ensure that it was operational. b. Used the turning hand-ringing generator on the telephone (TA 312/PT) to terminate and ring off circuits as they became available to called parties. c. Processed calls. d. Updated the traffic diagram, as required. e. Performed operator preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the SB according to the appropriate TM. 5. The section performs PMCS on the field cable or wire lines. a. Maintained a 20-percent slack in the field cable or wire lines. b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-5710.00-0001	Place a Telephone Set, TA-312/PT or TA-1/PT, into Operation	STP 21-II-MQS
01-5711.02-0001	Install Hot Loop with Telephone TA-312/PT	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
03-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
03-3711.12-0002	Protect Classified Information and Material	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

ELEMENT: S1 SECTION

TASK: Report Casualties (12-1-0403.05-T01A)
 (FM 12-6) (AR 600-8-1) (TC 12-17)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Soldiers have been either wounded, killed, captured, or are missing. Casualty reports are arriving from supported units. The unit is equipped with the Tactical Army Combat-Service-Support (CSS) Computer System (TACCS). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Casualty information is processed and provided daily to the supporting personnel service company (PSC) and parent brigade. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section collects casualty information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Logged casualty information on Department of the Army (DA) Form 1594. b. Completed missing information. c. Verified data. 2. The S1 section processes casualty data. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Posted the battle roster. b. Initiated the casualty feeder report. c. Printed the casualty feeder report. d. Backed up the feeder report file. e. Restored the feeder files. f. Merged the feeder reports for task force units. g. Prepared the transmittal letters. h. Prepared letters of condolence and sympathy and forwarded them to the division Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel) (G1) or separate brigade S1. * 3. The personnel staff noncommissioned officer (PSNCO) forwards casualty data. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed casualty feeder reports for accuracy and completeness with data entered on DA Form 1594. b. Reconciled the casualty log with the strength accounting data. c. Corrected any deficiencies. d. Forwarded casualty feeder reports to the servicing PSC. * 4. The battalion S1 disseminates casualty information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided data to the battalion command group and staff. b. Coordinated religious rites with the chaplain. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

ARTEP 5-425-66-MTP

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 SECTION
BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Perform Strength Accounting (12-1-0404.05-T01A)
(FM 12-6) (TC 12-16)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Personnel losses and gains have occurred. The daily personnel status report (PSR) is required. The unit is Tactical Army Combat Service Support (CSS) Computer System (TACCS) equipped. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The battalion strength data for supported units as recorded on the PSR is within plus or minus 5 percent of the actual companies' present-for-duty strength. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section collects strength information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Logged incoming situation reports (SITREPs) and messages from subordinate units. b. Spot-checked strength reports for missing information. c. Collected other personnel strength information from the tactical operation center (TOC) and the battalion aid station. 2. The personnel and administration center (PAC) updates the Command and Control Strength Reporting System (C2SRS). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Updated the battle roster. b. Entered individual changes. c. Posted the commander's narrative guidance. d. Printed personnel status (PS) and personnel requirements report (PRR). e. Forwarded the PS/PRR to the personnel staff noncommissioned officer (PSNCO). f. Created a TACCS floppy diskette of the PS/PRR. g. Printed an updated battle roster as required and provided it to the companies. * 3. The PSNCO reviews the C2SRS. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed the PS/PRR for completeness and accuracy. b. Cross-checked the primary military occupational specialty (PMOS) or duty military occupation specialty (DMOS) report against the PRR. c. Forwarded the reports to the PAC supervisor. * 4. The PAC supervisor forwards strength information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided data to the supporting personnel service company (PSC). b. Provided data to the brigade S1. c. Provided data to the S1 section of attached units. * 5. The S1 disseminates strength data. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Briefed the command group and staff daily. b. Supported the staff decision-planning process with personnel strength information. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S1 SECTION

TASK: Conduct Replacement Operations (12-1-0405.05-T01A)
(TC 12-16) (FM 12-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Replacements arrive in the battalion area. The unit is equipped with the Tactical Army Combat-Service-Support (CSS) Computer System (TACCS). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Replacements are processed and transported to their units within 4 hours of their arrival. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The Personnel and Administration Center (PAC) conducts administrative processing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed assignment orders. b. Welcomed soldiers to the unit. c. Assigned soldiers to units according to the commanders' priorities. d. Signed soldiers in on Department of the Army (DA) Form 647. e. Collected medical and dental records. f. Turned in medical and dental records to the battalion aid station. g. Added names to the battle roster. h. Prepared Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) input. i. Completed DA Form 3955. j. Forwarded DA Form 3955 to the servicing postal activity. * 2. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) or PAC supervisor processes soldiers into the command. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Briefed the mission and the tactical situation. b. Coordinated mess and medical support. c. Inspected soldiers for combat-critical clothing shortages. d. Coordinated equipment issue. e. Coordinated transportation to subordinate units. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

ARTEP 5-425-66-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S1 SECTION

TASK: Process Personnel and Administrative Actions (12-1-0406.05-T01A)
 (AR 25-50) (AR 27-10) (FM 12-6)
 (TC 12-16)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is performing its combat mission. Requests for personnel actions are being received. Distribution, Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ) actions, and hometown news releases are being received. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Personnel actions are processed as soon as possible in keeping with the tactical situation in a manner that precludes adverse morale implications. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Personnel and Administration Center (PAC) collects requests from supported companies and higher headquarters (HQ). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Logged receipt of all actions. b. Verified actions to ensure validity and need. c. Corrected erroneous and incomplete data. 2. The PAC processes information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prioritized all personnel actions. b. Prepared appropriate personnel forms, such as Department of the Army (DA) Forms 2266-R and 4187. c. Reviewed actions for accuracy and completeness. d. Corrected erroneous and incomplete data. e. Advised the soldiers. * 3. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) or PAC supervisor processes actions. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed technical and administrative reviews. b. Corrected minor errors. c. Approved or recommended approval. d. Dispatched actions to higher HQ for further actions. * 4. The S1 or PAC supervisor disseminates information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Briefed the commander on the status of personnel actions. b. Informed subordinate companies and soldiers on the status of personnel actions. 5. The PAC processes award recommendations. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed recommendations for awards. b. Processed DA Form 638s. c. Forwarded the recommendations to the approving authority. d. Processed a copy of the recommendation for award, which has a suspense. e. Forwarded approved awards to the unit commander for presentation at an appropriate ceremony (when situation permitted). 6. The PAC processes leave requests. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Processed DA Form 31s. b. Maintained a leave control log. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Forwarded required copies of DA Form 31 to the Finance Support Command (FSC), as appropriate.</p> <p>7. The PAC processes Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) input.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepared SIDPERS input. b. Reviewed SIDPERS transactions for accuracy and completeness. c. Obtained required signatures for SIDPERS transmittal. <p>8. The PAC manages the evaluation reporting system.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initiated evaluation report shells. b. Established internal suspenses for the evaluation report. c. Forwarded evaluation work sheets to appropriate subordinate units. d. Reviewed returned evaluation reports for completeness and accuracy. e. Prepared evaluation reports, if required. f. Returned completed evaluation reports for required signatures. g. Checked returned evaluation reports to ensure that signatures and dates were correct. h. Forwarded completed evaluation reports to the Personnel Service Company (PSC). <p>9. The PAC provides administrative support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained suspense control. b. Typed all standing operating procedures (SOPs) and correspondence for the battalion commander, the executive officer (XO), and the units (including memorandums, letters, endorsements, accident reports, and forms). c. Operated reproduction equipment. d. Maintained reproduction equipment. e. Picked up distribution from higher HQ. f. Sorted distribution. g. Secured distribution. h. Processed distribution from staff sections and subordinate and attached units. i. Maintained required blank forms and publications. <p>10. The PAC processes promotion recommendations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verified soldiers' eligibility. b. Forwarded a list of names of eligible soldiers to subordinate units. c. Forwarded promotion recommendations to the appropriate promotion authority. d. Verified proper distribution of promotion orders (individual, personnel, and finance). e. Initiated further command actions when required. <p>11. The PAC processes letters of reprimand.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the facts that support the imposition of the letter of reprimand. b. Prepared the letter of reprimand for the commander's signature. c. Prepared the notification letter to the individual advising him of his rights. <p>12. The PAC processes letters of indebtedness.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Gathered all documents and facts bearing on the claimed indebtedness of the soldier. b. Prepared the letter for the commander's signature to the agency or individual claiming the debt. c. Dispatched the letter to the agency or individual. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Followed up, if necessary. e. Referred the soldier to the division Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) or brigade legal advisor for legal assistance and preparation of response to debtors. 13. The PAC processes letters of nonsupport. a. Determined the type of letter to be prepared based on all the facts gathered. b. Determined all information bearing on the claimed nonsupport by the soldier. c. Prepared the letter for the commander's or the soldier's signature. d. Dispatched the letter to the agency or individual claiming nonsupport. 14. The PAC processes other adverse actions. a. Ensured that all facts and supporting documents were available. b. Prepared required administrative documents. c. Forwarded the packet to the appropriate authority for action. 15. The PAC provides financial assistance. a. Processed related documents. b. Distributed net pay advice (NPA) and leave and earnings statements (LES). c. Resolved less-complicated pay problems. d. Answered pay-related inquires. e. Provided liaison and coordination with the supporting FSC.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S1 SECTION

TASK: Provide Legal Support (12-1-0410.05-T01A)

(AR 27-10)	(AR 15-6)	(AR 190-47)
(AR 27-1)	(AR 27-20)	(AR 600-20)
(AR 600-50)	(AR 600-8-2)	(AR 600-85)
(AR 635-200)		

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is deployed and conducting combat operations. Requests for legal support have been received. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Legal support is provided to the command in accordance with (IAW) the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ), other laws and directives, the Manual for Courts-Martial (MCM), and the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The battalion legal noncommissioned officer (NCO) or specialist provides the battalion commander with the current status of legal matters, such as-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Courts-martial actions/dispositions. b. Nonjudicial proceedings. c. Administrative separation actions. d. Formal/informal investigations. e. Other adverse administrative actions (bars to reenlistment, letters of reprimand, and so forth). 2. The battalion legal NCO or specialist assists subordinate commanders and soldiers. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with subordinate units to assist in the disposition of courts and boards actions. b. Prepared charge sheets and allied papers, confinement orders, and the commander's actions. c. Recorded and prepared summarized proceedings of Article 32(b) investigations (Department of Defense (DD) Form 457). d. Prepared records of nonjudicial punishment. e. Reviewed records of nonjudicial punishment forwarded by subordinate units. f. Processed appeals of nonjudicial punishment and monitored posting of records to personnel and financial files. g. Prepared notifications of administrative separation. h. Recorded and prepared summarized records of board proceedings related to administrative separations. i. Prepared, processed, and monitored the administrative separation actions. j. Recorded and prepared summarized records of trial for special courts-martial. k. Prepared and processed records of trial for summary courts-martial. l. Prepared, processed, and monitored the suspension of favorable personnel actions. 3. The battalion legal NCO or specialist coordinates with the brigade legal NCO for legal services from the Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) or brigade legal advisor. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Acted as liaison between subordinate units and the SJA section. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Assisted the legal assistance officer in preparing powers of attorney, wills, and other legal assistance documents. c. Assisted the claims judge advocate with claims investigations and assisted in the preparation of claims forms to include forwarding them for appropriate disposition. d. Forwarded documents for review by administrative law and contract law personnel. e. Assisted judge advocates with military justice training as well as international law and operational law training. f. Assisted the trial counsel in preparing pretrial, trial, and posttrial documents. g. Arranged for witnesses and other necessary personnel to be present at the courts-martial. h. Assisted in processing of posttrial prisoners for confinement. <p>4. The battalion legal NCO or specialist coordinates with the trial defense service for defense counsel services.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Arranged for advice by counsel for nonjudicial punishment proceedings. b. Arranged for consultation with counsel for administrative separations/representation. <p>* 5. The battalion commander administers UCMJ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Evaluated evidence and determined the appropriate disposition of violations of the UCMJ. b. Administered nonjudicial punishment. c. Returned charges to the subordinate commander for other disposition. d. Referred charges to trial by summary court or forwarded charges for trial by courts-martial. <p>* 6. The battalion commander disposes of disciplinary infractions and misconduct by other than judicial or nonjudicial proceedings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initiated, forwarded, approved, or returned letters of reprimand/admonition. b. Approved, disapproved, or forwarded administrative separations. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A)
 (FM 19-40) (AR 190-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The enemy soldiers surrendered or were captured. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The capturing element takes charge of and evacuates EPWs according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and the search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag (5 Ss and T). Digital units send reports vis frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The element searches the EPWs. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Removed the weapons and the documents that had intelligence value. b. Returned the personal items of no military-intelligence value, such as protective clothing and equipment. c. Furnished receipts to the prisoners for their personal property taken. 2. The element segregates the EPWs. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Segregated the EPWs by rank, sex, deserters, civilians, nationality, and ideology, when possible. b. Turned the wounded EPWs over to the medical personnel for evacuation through the medical channels. 3. The element silences the EPWs. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prevented the EPWs leaders from giving orders. b. Prevented the EPWs from planning escape. c. Did not talk in front of the EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline. 4. The element safeguards the EPWs. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Removed the EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield. b. Did not allow anyone to abuse the EPWs. c. Treated the EPWs humanely. 5. The element tags the EPWs with a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Annotated the date and time of the capture, the capturing unit, the grid coordinates of the capture, and the circumstances of the capture. b. Attached Part A to the EPWs. c. Retained Part B for the unit records. d. Attached Part C to the property. 6. The element speeds the EPWs to the rear. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Notified higher headquarters (HQ) that the company had EPWs. b. Removed the EPWs rearward to the nearest military police (MP) collecting point. c. Exploited the intelligence information. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Conduct Unit-Level Maintenance Operations (43-2-0001.05-T01A)
 (FM 9-43-1) (AR 220-1) (AR 385-40)
 (AR 700-138) (AR 750-1) (DA PAM 738-750)
 (FM 9-43-2) (STP 21-24-SMCT) (STP 21-II-MQS)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit maintenance personnel receive requests to repair the inoperative organic equipment. The unit maintenance area is established. The required tools, equipment, and personnel are available. The operators are performing preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the equipment. Recovery operations with injured operators on board may be required. The company's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) is available. Unit maintenance is a continuous task and is performed simultaneously with the other internal support and operational tasks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit's vehicles and equipment are maintained according to appropriate technical manuals (TMs) and the commander's guidance. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The company commander directs the unit's maintenance program. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Supervised the implementation of the unit's maintenance program for compliance with the commander's guidance and the TSOP. b. Identified the company operational levels by reviewing the vehicle and equipment status reports. c. Approved the use of controlled exchanges when the required repair parts were not available. d. Approved repairs using the battle damage assessment and repair (BDAR) procedures when the established repair procedures could not be used. e. Checked the material-condition status report (MCSR) for accuracy and completeness. f. Identified the current or anticipated maintenance problems to minimize their impact on the unit's readiness. g. Coordinated the resolution of maintenance problems with the battalion maintenance officer (BMO). h. Forwarded the MCSR to the BMO. i. Conducted periodic inspections of the personnel and the equipment to ensure that the safety program was enforced. * 2. The section leaders supervise the operator maintenance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored PMCS performance for compliance with appropriate TMs and the commander's guidance. b. Inspected personnel and equipment to ensure compliance with the safety program. c. Coordinated the maintenance assistance with the motor sergeant. d. Monitored the supply of the repair parts for the platoon's equipment to ensure that the repair parts were on order. e. Requested approval for the BDAR through the motor sergeant. f. Maintained maintenance status of the vehicles, weapons, and equipment. g. Provided input for the MCSR to the commander. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. The company personnel perform operator maintenance.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed PMCS according to appropriate TMs. b. Notified the supervisor of any maintenance problems beyond the operator's capability. c. Requested approval for the BDAR through the platoon leader when the established repair procedures could not be used. d. Performed the BDAR according to the appropriate BDAR manual. e. Assisted the unit's maintenance personnel with the repairs and services. <p>* 4. The motor sergeant supervises the unit's maintenance personnel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Organized the unit's maintenance personnel to perform unit-maintenance activities. b. Supervised The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS) and the prescribed load list (PLL) procedures for completeness and accuracy. c. Supervised the repair and inspection procedures to ensure that they were done safely and according to appropriate references. d. Requested approval for the BDAR from the commander when the established repair procedures could not be used. e. Supervised the BDAR procedures to ensure that they were done according to the appropriate BDAR manuals. f. Requested approval for controlled exchanges from the commander when the required repair parts were not available. g. Supervised the use of controlled exchanges for compliance with the commander's guidance. h. Notified the platoon or section leaders upon completion of the repairs. i. Supervised the recovery operations to ensure that the correct recovery and safety procedures were used. j. Supervised the Army Oil Analyses Program (AOAP) procedures to ensure that the testing of oil samples was done at the required intervals. k. Coordinated the maintenance status with the platoon leader. l. Provided the unit's maintenance status to the commander. <p>5. The unit maintenance personnel repair organic equipment.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Diagnosed faults on the inoperative equipment. b. Requested the required repair parts for completion of the repair from the PLL clerk. c. Repaired the equipment according to applicable TMs. d. Requested approval for the BDAR through the motor sergeant when the established repair parts were not available. e. Performed the BDAR according to the appropriate BDAR manual. f. Requested approval for controlled exchanges through the motor sergeant when the required repair parts were not available. g. Performed controlled exchanges. h. Performed a final inspection to ensure quality control of repairs. i. Employed safety procedures to minimize accidents. <p>6. The unit maintenance personnel conduct transactions with support maintenance.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the category of the repair as direct-support or higher. b. Corrected unit-level deficiencies. c. Prepared the required documentation for submission to support maintenance. d. Evacuated the equipment to support maintenance. e. Verified the completion of the repairs. f. Picked up the equipment upon the completion of repairs. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>7. The unit maintenance personnel perform administrative-support functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained the PLL. b. Requested repair parts for the unit's equipment. c. Turned in unserviceable, repairable items. d. Maintained technical publications on all organic equipment. <p>8. The unit maintenance personnel recover the disabled vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verified the location of the disabled vehicle. b. Identified the best route to the vehicle, given the tactical situation. c. Coordinated the indirect-fire support along the route with the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) and the Operations and Training Officer (S3). d. Maintained security while en route to the recovery site. e. Established local security at the recovery site. f. Removed casualties from vehicles. g. Treated casualties. h. Requested medical assistance, if required. i. Evacuated casualties, if required. j. Performed a battle damage assessment to determine if repairs were required. k. Performed repairs and the BDAR on site, if possible. l. Recovered nonrepairable equipment back to the unit's maintenance area according to the established recovery procedures. m. Requested the disposition of unrecoverable equipment from the commander. n. Conducted salvage operations to remove all usable equipment. o. Prepared vehicles for destruction according to the TSOP. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion) (05-1-0002)
 (FM 5-100) (FM 101-5) (FM 5-102)
 (FM 5-103) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is performing continuous tactical operations in darkness and daylight under all weather conditions. The battalion is working directly for an engineer brigade, group, or maneuver force. The battalion or element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO), operation order (OPORD), or supplementary order from higher headquarters (HQ). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The estimate provides the commander feasible courses of action consistent with the supported commander's scheme of maneuver. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander performs a mission analysis.</p> <p>a. Identified the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) The intent of the immediate commander and the commander two levels up. (2) The area of operations. (3) The tasks to perform, including both specified (directed) in the commander's verbal guidance (or in the OPORD) and implied by the nature of the operation. Decides which were essential to success. (4) The constraints. Acts requiring completion. (5) The restraints. Prohibited acts. <p>b. Restated the unit mission in terms of who, what (including all essential tasks), when, where, and why.</p> <p>* 2. The battalion commander, aided by the staff, performs a situation analysis.</p> <p>a. Identified the operations to support, including the nature of the operations, the composition of the supported forces, unusual requirements, and other factors affecting the size and scope of the support mission.</p> <p>b. Identified the characteristics of the area of operations and the enemy situation. The battalion--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) determined the impact of the area of operations characteristics on the engineer courses of action. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Analyzed weather for precipitation and temperature impact on trafficability of the enemy and the friendly combat vehicles; water obstacle's depth, flow rate, and bank conditions; ability to dig positions and tank ditches; fog/limited visibility impact on obstacle positioning; employment of mines in severe weather conditions; and engineer vehicle capabilities to maneuver in limited visibility and reduced trafficability and to keep pace with maneuver unit-fighting vehicles. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(b) Analyzed the terrain. (1) Observation/fields of fire. Analyzed the impact on obstacle placement (both friendly and enemy) and selected items such as buildings and vegetation to clear to improve observation. (2) Cover and concealment. Identified concealed locations for engineer equipment and materials (especially during breaching and river crossing operations). Identified possible combat trails offering cover and concealment from enemy ground, air, and satellite surveillance. (3) Obstacles. Identified existing natural and man-made obstacles and their impact on maneuver, avenues of approach, and placement of reinforcing obstacles. Evaluated these with respect to friendly and enemy maneuver. (4) Key/decisive terrain. Determined potential engineer tasks required to facilitate friendly control and/or deny enemy control. (5) Avenues of approach. Identified friendly and enemy mobility corridors and avenues of approach, based on the unit. Evaluated engineer actions to enhance or hinder movement on those avenues of approach.</p> <p>(c) Analyzed any other characteristics important to the engineer plan.</p> <p>(2) S2, working with the supported unit's Assistant Chief of Staff, G2 (Intelligence) (G2)/S2, developed the enemy engineer situation. The S2 estimated the strength of enemy engineer units, including any information (confirmed, suspected).</p> <p>c. Evaluated its own situation.</p> <p>(1) Tactical situation. Dispositions of major tactical elements, possible courses of action, and current and projected operations.</p> <p>(2) Personnel and logistics. Disposition of logistics units and facilities supporting engineer operations, levels of engineer Class IV and Class V items, and availability of transportation assets.</p> <p>(3) Engineer situation. Disposition and capabilities of battalion elements, estimated completion times of current tasks, and combat support units to assist with engineer tasks (especially scatterable mines).</p> <p>* 3. The battalion commander, aided by the staff, develops at least two separate courses of action to accomplish the mission or develops an engineer plan to support each course of action by the maneuver force.</p> <p>a. Identified requirements, to include all tasks and the necessary resources to accomplish them, by each location or by each supported unit.</p> <p>(1) Computed blade hours using known data. If actual data was not available, used the planning factors according to Field Manuals (FMs) 5-34, 5-102, or 5-103.</p> <p>(2) Computed platoon hours.</p> <p>(3) Identified any unique or special equipment requirements.</p> <p>(4) Identified supply requirements by class of supply and specific items.</p> <p>b. Summarized resource requirements by platoon hours, equipment, and logistics for each location or supported unit.</p> <p>c. Determined general priorities for tasks based upon the higher commander's guidance.</p> <p>d. Allocated engineer forces so that they--</p> <p>(1) Met the higher commander's guidance.</p> <p>(2) Accomplished all the tasks.</p> <p>(3) Employed assets efficiently (with no wasted platoon or equipment time).</p> <p>* 4. The battalion commander, aided by the staff, analyzes each course of action.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. War-gamed the engineer plan for each course of action against anticipated enemy actions and reactions. Evaluated the plan against the significant factors impacting on it.</p> <p>NOTE: For subconditions b and c, these significant factors included the critical maneuver force events.</p> <p>b. Determined shortfalls by comparing resource requirements with available assets.</p> <p>c. Reduced shortfalls by establishing priorities, sequencing activities, selecting alternate methods, and altering the engineer plan as necessary until the requirement was within plus or minus 10 percent of available resources. The staff engineer conducted this analysis with the Assistant Chief of Staff, G3 (Operations and Plans) (G3)/Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</p> <p>NOTE: If the engineer plan could not meet the minimum critical maneuver requirements, then it was not feasible and the plan was invalid. The commander must recognize this and formulated a new plan, starting at subtask 3.</p> <p>* 5. The battalion commander, aided by the staff, compares each course of action and selects the one best for accomplishing the mission.</p> <p>a. Determined the selection technique to use in the comparison.</p> <p>b. Used the significant factors identified in subtask 4a.</p> <p>c. Selected the best course of action based on subjective judgment, not entirely upon numerical techniques.</p> <p>NOTE: Numerical factors may be used in the selection technique chosen by the commander as an aid in making a decision. The final decision, however, must not be based solely upon simple mathematics.</p> <p>* 6. The battalion commander makes a decision.</p> <p>a. Stated his decision clearly to his subordinates.</p> <p>b. Determined the battalion's task organization and allocated resources.</p> <p>c. Assigned each task to a subordinate element.</p> <p>* 7. The battalion commander makes a recommendation to the supported maneuver commander.</p> <p>a. Stated which course of action the troops could best support (from the engineer perspective).</p> <p>b. Identified the major deficiencies that the maneuver commander must remedy, including recommendations for eliminating or reducing them.</p> <p>c. Recommended the engineer task organization, command/support relationships (as necessary), tasks to be directed to subordinate elements, and priorities for engineer support.</p> <p>8. The staff engineer responsibilities are as follows:</p> <p>a. Coordinated the analysis with the battle staff.</p> <p>b. Provided input to the battle staff analysis.</p> <p>c. Evaluated his own situation.</p> <p>(1) Tactical situation. Dispositions of major tactical elements, possible courses of action, and current and projected operations.</p> <p>(2) Personnel and logistics. Disposition of logistics units and facilities supporting engineer operations, levels of engineer Class IV and Class V items, and availability of transportation assets.</p> <p>(3) Engineer situation. Disposition and capabilities of battalion elements, estimated completion times of current tasks, and combat support units to assist with engineer tasks (especially scatterable mines).</p> <p>d. Analyzed each course of action.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) War-gamed the engineer plan for each course of action against anticipated enemy actions and reactions. Evaluated the plan against the significant factors impacting on it.</p> <p>NOTE: These significant factors included the critical maneuver force events.</p> <p>(2) Determined shortfalls by comparing resource requirements with available assets.</p> <p>(3) Reduced shortfalls by establishing priorities, sequencing activities, selecting alternate methods, and altering the engineer plan as necessary until the requirement was within plus or minus 10 percent of available resources. The staff engineer conducted this analysis with the G3/S3.</p> <p>NOTE: If the engineer plan could not meet the minimum critical maneuver requirements, then it is not feasible and the plan is invalid. The staff engineer must recognize this and formulate a new plan, starting at subtask 3.</p> <p>e. The staff engineer selects the course of action which can be best supported from the engineer perspective.</p> <p>(1) Determined the selection technique to use in the comparison.</p> <p>(2) Used the significant factors identified in subtask 4a.</p> <p>(3) Selected the best course of action based on subjective judgment, but not entirely upon numerical techniques.</p> <p>NOTE: Numerical factors may be used in the selection technique chosen by the commander as an aid in making a decision. The final decision, however, must not be based solely upon simple mathematics.</p> <p>f. Made a recommendation to the supported maneuver commander.</p> <p>(1) Stated which course of action the troops could best support (from the engineer perspective).</p> <p>(2) Identified the major deficiencies that the maneuver commander must remedy, including recommendations for eliminating or reducing them.</p> <p>(3) Recommended the engineer task organization, command/support relationships (as necessary), tasks to be directed to subordinate elements, and priorities for engineer support.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
05-1-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex Battalion	ARTEP 5-025-66-MTP ARTEP 5-155-66-MTP ARTEP 5-215-66-MTP ARTEP 5-335-66-MTP ARTEP 5-425-66-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
05-1-0008	PREPARE AN OPERATIONS ORDER	ARTEP 5-435-66-MTP ARTEP 5-445-64-MTP ARTEP 5-445-66-MTP ARTEP 5-605-66-MTP ARTEP 5-335-66-MTP ARTEP 5-337-10-MTP ARTEP 5-417-35-MTP ARTEP 5-435-66-MTP ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP ARTEP 5-437-11-MTP ARTEP 5-443-35-MTP ARTEP 5-500-66-MTP ARTEP 5-520-10-MTP ARTEP 5-520-14-MTP ARTEP 5-605-66-MTP ARTEP 5-606-34-MTP ARTEP 5-607-35-MTP ARTEP 5-615-66-MTP
05-1-0415	ANALYZE BATTLEFIELD INFORMATION	

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Maintain Contact (5-OPFOR-0003)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

STANDARD: Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the opposing forces (OPFOR) as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

STANDARD: Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Prepare an Engineer Annex Battalion (05-1-0003)
 (FM 101-5) (FM 5-100) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The engineer battalion, in supporting a maneuver unit in a tactical operation, provides the staff engineer on the maneuver headquarters (HQ) battle staff. The staff engineer must prepare an engineer annex as part of the maneuver unit operational order (OPORD). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The annex contains the essential information needed to support the maneuver commander's operation. The annex is clear and the maneuver force understands its concept. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The staff engineer selects an annex format based upon the amount and type of information it will contain, the time available to produce it, and guidance from the maneuver unit's Assistant Chief of Staff, G3 (Operations and Plans) or Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). He usually prepares the annex in the five-paragraph format (plus appendixes), but under conditions of limited time can use or combine any of the following formats:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. A written annex using the basic five-paragraph order format. b. An overlay(s), including-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) All existing and proposed friendly obstacles and their control measures (belts, zones, restricted areas, lanes, and gaps). (2) All known and templated enemy obstacles. (3) Nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC-) contaminated areas. c. An obstacle list containing all directed obstacles. d. An engineer execution matrix (time, phase, or event-based), including-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) All identified engineer tasks. (2) All identified logistic and coordination requirements. (3) Marginal notes to cover any other required information. <p>2. The staff engineer ensures the annex--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Uses the information derived during the estimate process. b. Contains any information related to the engineer plan not covered elsewhere in the order. <p>NOTE: The annex may contain information already present in the parent order if this is necessary for clarity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Does not contain items covered in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) but may reference the SOP. d. Is directed to the major subordinate elements of the maneuver unit and not just the engineers. <p>NOTE: The engineer annex is not the engineer unit's OPORD. It covers the entire engineer plan, not just the part pertaining to engineer units.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Is clear, complete, brief, timely, and avoids qualified directives. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Does not contain irrelevant information. (2) CRITICAL: Is issued with the OPORD. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Fully integrates details with the other parts of the OPORD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) All tasks directed to units other than engineers are coordinated prior to issuance of the annex. (2) All details are coordinated with the appropriate battle staff element prior to inclusion in the annex. <p>3. The staff engineer, when using the written five-paragraph order format, ensures the annex includes the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. SITUATION. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Enemy Forces. Identified aspects significantly impacting engineer operations, including terrain, weather, and enemy engineer capability. (2) Friendly Forces. Identified the designation, location, and activities of higher and adjacent engineers. Described other elements capable of assisting with the engineer plan. <p>NOTE: Nonengineer units with scatterable-mine emplacement capability (artillery, army aviation, and air force) are identified here.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (3) Attachments and detachments (only if needed for clarity). b. MISSION. Stated the mission of engineers in support of the base OPORD. c. EXECUTION. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Scheme of engineer operations (SOEO). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Contained a brief statement of the concept of the engineer plan, including the priority of engineer support to subordinate elements. The statement was precise and specific. (b) Identified individual obstacles and obstacle groups, type (reserved or preliminary), authorized commander (for reserved obstacles), and subordinate-unit obstacle responsibilities, as appropriate. Referred to an overlay and obstacle table. (c) Explained the scatterable-mine employment concept, authority for long and short self-destruct (by system), other requirements and/or limitations, and allocation to subordinate elements, as appropriate. Identified nonengineer units responsible for emplacing scatterable mines. (2) Tasks for subordinate units. Identified tasks for subordinate maneuver units, engineers under direct control of issuing HQ, and other elements assigned engineer tasks by the maneuver commander. (3) Coordinating instructions, as necessary. Ensured that measures and reporting procedures applying to two or more subordinate units were completed. d. SERVICE SUPPORT. Included the logistic information affecting the engineer plan, specifically Class IV, Class V, and transportation; identified available host-nation assets and their location; and identified allocations and/or priorities for command-regulated items. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Command-regulated classes of supply. (2) Class IV and/or V supplies distribution plan. (3) Transportation. (4) Medical evacuation and hospitalization. (5) Civil-military operations. e. COMMAND AND SIGNAL. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Command. Include the location of engineer command posts (CPs) and special command arrangements. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Signal. Stated the specific signal operation instructions (SOI) index used by engineer elements; identified the call sign and frequency of supporting units from another HQ; identified any alternate means of communications for engineer missions such as target demolition and lane closure and provided instructions for coordinating and establishing communications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Report Engineer Information (05-1-0026)
 (FM 5-100) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The engineer battalion is conducting continuous operations. The battalion's tactical operations center (TOC) is operational and in a secure area. The TOC is transferring engineer information to other elements (higher headquarters [HQ] and adjacent and subordinate units). Digital units have performed functionality checks, all digital systems are providing information on the common operational picture (COP) and maintaining situational awareness (SA). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Higher HQ and adjacent and subordinate units have continuous, accurate, and timely engineer information which will have an impact on their operations. Digital units sre sending and receiving reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. All reports sent via digital means must also be followed up with the appropriate Department of the Army (DA) form according to standardization agreement (STANAG) and unit tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The battalion TOC (Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or Operations and Training Officer [US Army] [S3]) receives engineer information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Logged information in a message log on the Maneuver Control System (MCS). b. Requested clarification of information received from the submitting element. c. Maintained a file copy of all hard-copy reports. 2. The S2 or S3 analyzes the information received and disseminates it to the appropriate action element within the battalion TOC. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Disseminated the personnel and administration information to the Adjutant (US Army) (S1) utilizing the MCS. b. Disseminated the intelligence and weather information to the S2. c. Disseminated the operations and maneuver information to the S3. d. Disseminated the logistics and maintenance information to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) utilizing the MCS. e. Disseminated the command-related information (guidance, tactical decisions, and critical resources) to the command group commanding officer (CO) or executive officer (XO). f. Disseminated the information according to the battalion's standing operating procedure (SOP) to action elements utilizing the reporting procedures on the MCS. g. Disseminated the information copies to other elements, as required. 3. The action element(s) analyzes information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the content validity and filtered out noncritical (nonessential) information. b. Determined the importance of the information to the operation. c. Determined the required actions, coordination, and reports. 4. The action element(s) acts on the information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted required coordination with engineer and maneuver elements. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Updated digital overlays, records, status boards, and logs on the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System and the MCS. c. Determined the course of action (COA). d. Selected the COA. e. Obtained guidance or concurrence on the selected COA from relevant elements and the command group, when needed. f. Implemented the COA. g. Prepared required reports according to the battalion's SOP. h. Provided the S2 or S3 with an action summary and all appropriate reports according to the battalion's SOP. <p>5. The S2 or S3 prepares and submits reports and engineer information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepared the reports for transmission to subordinate elements and the battalion staff; transmitted/submitted the reports according to the battalion's SOP utilizing the MCS. b. Prepared and transmitted/submitted reports to higher HQ, supported maneuver command, and adjacent elements according to higher HQ's SOP utilizing the MCS. c. Updated digital overlays, records, status boards, and logs, on the MCS, as required. d. Submitted reports to the appropriate elements and HQ utilizing the MCS. e. Logged the submission/transmission of the report/information. f. Updated the command group utilizing the MCS or mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal (MSRT) as required. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
S1-9060.00-3000	Conduct Company and Battalion Operations According to the Laws of War	STP 21-II-MQS
		STP 21-I-MQS

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: DEVELOP AND IMPLEMENT AN AREA-DAMAGE-CONTROL (ADC) PLAN (05-1-0029)
(FM 5-104)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is located in the division or corps rear area or communications zone (COMMZ). The higher headquarters (HQ) assigns area-damage-control (ADC) tasks to the battalion. Higher HQ establishes the mission requirements and priorities. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The ADC plan minimizes the effects of an enemy attack. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3), assisted by the communications-electronics (CE) officer, establishes communications with the supported unit's rear operations command (either a rear-area operations center [RAOC], base cluster, or base).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used normal signal channels (frequency modulated [FM], land line, or multichannel). b. Established a communication link to afford the capability for immediate communications at any time. c. Coordinated the engineer unit plans with the ADC requirements and periodically monitored the supported command element. <p>* 2. The battalion commander and staff use information developed from the engineer estimate with ADC considerations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified and prioritized potential ADC tasks. b. Determined the specialized engineer support required beyond the battalion's capability. c. Determined preventive actions to take prior to an incident. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Stockpiled materials. (2) Located alternate routes. (3) Identified replacement facilities. (4) Identified other requirements as appropriate. d. Identified host-nation assets and other units required and/or available. e. Designated an engineer company to perform each ADC task, starting with the highest priority. f. Specified quality standards for the repair. <p>3. Companies perform preventive tasks prior to an event occurring.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed an on-site reconnaissance. b. Developed repair and contingency plans. c. Established communications links with the supported element. d. Requested assets from higher echelons (if required) and coordinate for linkup. <p>4. The battalion staff, upon request, reviews unit, base, and base cluster ADC plans.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service-support (CSS) operations.

STANDARD: The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Control Area-Damage-Control Operations (05-1-0031)
(FM 5-104)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Battle damage has occurred. An area-damage-control (ADC) plan has been implemented. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The battalion staff monitors progress, shifts assets, and ensures that all work is completed in priority and to standard. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) sends an assessment team to identify the damages and repair requirements. The team consists of--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. At least two personnel, one from the S3 section and one from the unit, designated to provide ADC support. b. Military occupational specialty (MOS-) qualified or experienced personnel to make a valid estimate of the required repair. <p>2. The assessment team identifies the extent of damage and estimates repair requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the extent of the damage. b. Determined the extent of the required repair. c. Communicated identified repair requirements as soon as possible to reduce the disruption caused by the damage. <p>3. Companies execute ADC tasks based on the established priorities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Accomplished work as fast as possible to minimize disruption of facility operations. b. Incorporated host-nation support, as appropriate. c. Incorporated higher echelon assets or other military elements, if involved in the repair. d. Accomplished the ADC tasks as prioritized by the echelon commander. e. Strengthened the repair unit's capability by shifting units from nonpriority missions to the unit performing the ADC mission. <p>4. Units complete the minimum repair to accomplish the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Accomplished work in accordance with (IAW) guidelines in appropriate field manuals (FMs) and/or technical manuals (TMs). b. Did no work that was within the supported unit's capability to execute. c. Did no work that was not essential to the designated repair task. d. Performed the next priority task. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Control a Base in a Base Cluster (05-1-0035)

(FM 5-100-15)
(FM 24-35)
(TC 24-20)

(FM 24-18)
(FM 24-35-1)

(FM 24-19)
(FM 5-71-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is in the division rear, corps rear, or communications zone (COMMZ) under an enemy threat level I or II. The company commander is the base commander and has received guidance from the base-cluster commander on base location, composition, reaction-team requirements, and area of coverage. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company implements control measures ensuring continuous coordination and communication. The company controls defensive actions to resist attack, maintain control of defended area, and/or counter opposing forces (OPFOR) for dispersion or capture.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The senior element command post (CP) establishes a base-defense operations center (BDOC). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assumed the BDOC functions. b. Incorporated a liaison from other units located in the base. c. Planned, prepared, and supervised internal operations to protect personnel, equipment, and resources from enemy attack. d. Conducted an internal vulnerability analysis of units and the base. 2. The BDOC develops a base defense plan and forwards it to the base-cluster operations center (BCOC). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained the perimeter sector sketches and developed a base fire plan. b. Incorporated information gathered from all units within the base. c. Ensured that the base fire plan integrates the fires of all units in the base. d. Planned for and supervised internal base defense measures and identified requirements beyond organic capabilities. e. Established a reaction team to augment the defensive posture of the base (one squad). f. Changed the plan as needed and forwarded the changes to the BCOC. 3. The BDOC coordinates and establishes communications with the BCOC. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established and maintained continuous communications with the BCOC using organic equipment or equipment provided by the BCOC to include a-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Field telephone (primary). (2) Radio (alternate). Adhered to radio restrictions according to guidance from the BNCOC. (3) Messenger or courier (alternate). b. Ensured that the base-cluster commander's guidance was received and implemented. c. Recommended adjustments in the location and routines to enhance self-defense without detracting from the mission. d. Exchanged call signs and frequencies with the BCOC. 4. The BDOC establishes internal control measures within the base. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established a dismount point. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Established an access control point for the base and BDOC, if needed. c. Used perimeter security patrols and/or observation post (OP). 5. The company establishes an internal communications net using organic equipment and element assets, if appropriate. a. Maintained continuous landline communications with the dismount point, OPs, and platoons. b. Employed the current signal operation instructions (SOI). c. Used radio communications with security patrols as an alternate to the field telephone for internal communications. 6. The BDOC controls the defense against threat levels I and II attacks. a. Coordinated a mutual defense with local military police (MP) and other units. b. Requested response forces from the BCOC to defend against attack beyond the base's capability. c. Assisted response forces in defeating enemy attacks beyond the base's capability.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-256-3034	ORGANIZE JOBSITE SECURITY	STP 5-62N34-SM-TG
071-326-5770	PREPARE A PLATOON SECTOR SKETCH	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Control Airfield Damage Repair Operations (05-1-0045)
 (FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 5-430-00-2) (STP 21-II-MQS)
 (STP 5-12B24-SM-TG)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is conducting continuous tactical operations, and has received the mission of repairing a damaged airfield. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Coordinate equipment and personnel to complete repairs to allow C-130 landings.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) sends an assessment team to identify the damages and repair requirements. The team consists of--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. At least two personnel, one from the S3 section and one from the unit, designated to repair the airfield. b. Military occupational specialty (MOS-) qualified or experienced personnel to make a valid estimate of the required repair. <p>2. The assessment team identifies the extent of the damage and estimates repair requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the extent of the damage. b. Determined the extent of the required repair. c. Communicated identified repair requirements as soon as possible to reduce the disruption caused by the damage. d. Determined if explosive ordinance disposal (EOD) was required. <p>3. The S3 issues the warning order to the unit designated to conduct repairs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Clarified questions. b. Gave time and location of operation order (OPORD). <p>4. The S3 coordinates with the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) to acquire the necessary material.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the mission order was a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an OPORD, depending on the complexity of the mission and the time available. b. Ensured that key leaders were available when mission order was issued. <p>5. The staff sections support the unit designated to conduct repair. The staff--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that enough material was requested to complete the mission. b. Coordinated with the repair unit for the pick up of the material. c. Coordinated all additional resources the repair units needed. <p>6. The S3 monitors the progress of the mission and conducts quality assurance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured quality workmanship. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Removed any water in the crater before repairing. (2) Compacted debris and backfilled to specified standards. (3) Filled low spots. (4) Placed an impervious membrane on top of debris when the sand-grid method was used. (5) Placed two layers of sand grid on top of each crater. b. Ensured safety procedures were followed. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Personnel working with Sikikal followed all safety precautions. (2) Reported post status per unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Took action when timely completion of the mission was at risk. (1) Determined cause of delay. (2) Rectified the situation. d. Briefed the battalion commander and kept him informed of the status of the mission. (1) Determined the cause of delay. (2) Rectified the situation. 7. Upon completion of the mission the S3 conducts an inspection to ensure that the airfield is capable of supporting C-130 aircraft. a. Ensured that the minimum operating strips were at least 7,000 feet long and 90 feet wide. b. Verified that access routes were at least 25 feet wide.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Plan/Control Augmentation Support (05-1-0721)
(STP 21-II-MQS)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit has been tasked with a mission that requires additional resources. Augmentation support is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The battalion staff determines the augmentation support necessary to accomplish the mission; submits the request immediately after the estimate process, and effects coordination and logistical support that provides for unhindered mission execution by the attached unit. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The battalion staff conducts mission analysis and determines resource requirements and resources availability during the estimate process. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined resources required in time to accomplish the mission. b. Determined the availability of organic resources. c. Included requirements for rations, maintenance, fuel, and lubricants to support augmentation unit(s), to include shortfalls such as equipment maintenance. 2. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) submits a request for augmentation support. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requested augmentation support from higher headquarters (HQ) if not supporting a maneuver unit. b. Requested augmentation support from higher HQ and the maneuver commander when supporting a maneuver unit. c. Submitted request immediately after the estimate process was complete. d. Included the following information in the request: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Type of relationship (command or support). (2) Amount and type of personnel and equipment needed. (3) Length of time needed to accomplish the mission. (4) Mission of the battalion. (5) Mission of the augmentation support unit. 3. The battalion staff modifies the estimate process based on actual augmentation support received and-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prioritizes the effort for the supporting unit. b. Effects the coordination for logistical support based upon the command or support relationship such as food, fuel, and maintenance. 4. The S3 coordinates the liaison of the augmentation unit with the engineer company(s). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined time, place, and attendance requirements for issuing the battalion operation order (OPORD) if not already issued. b. Determined the time and place for the liaison between the augmentation unit and the engineer company. 5. The battalion staff monitors the attached units. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Received personnel strength, maintenance status, mission status, and updates as required. b. Shifted assets as necessary. c. Inspected the quality of workmanship. d. Visited the unit to maintain high morale. 6. Terminate augmentation support. a. Accounted for equipment and personnel. b. Reported mission accomplishment to higher and receiving HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service-support (CSS) base.

STANDARD: Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (05-3-1018.05-R01A)
 (FM 5-10) (FM 101-5) (FM 5-71-2)
 (FM 71-1) (FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element receives a mission from a warning order (WO), a fragmentary order (FRAGO), or an operation order (OPORD). Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit leader gives a WO, conducts a leader's reconnaissance, issues an OPORD, and supervises the preparation for the assigned mission within the allotted time. Digital units have the ability to conduct map reconnaissance using the Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS); the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) can be used to submit reports and orders and to update the common operational picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The element leader receives the mission in a WO, a FRAGO or an OPORD from its higher headquarters. The element leader determines the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC); the needed supplies and equipment; and special tasks to assign. * 2. The element leader issues a WO to the subordinate leaders. The element leader-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Stated the mission (nature of the operation). b. Identified the task organization. c. Stated the time of the operation. d. Gave any special instructions, such as drills to be rehearsed, precombat checks (PCCs), and precombat inspections (PCIs). e. Stated the element time line. * 3. The element leader develops a tentative plan while the element prepares for the mission. The element leader-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Developed the plan based on the METT-TC. b. Planned the available time using the reverse-planning process. c. Used no more than one-third of the available time, leaving the remainder for subordinate element preparation. d. Ensured that subordinate leaders began the PCCs and reconfigured equipment based on the mission. Subordinate leaders checked rations, water, weapons, ammunition, individual uniforms and equipment, mission-essential equipment, and the individual soldier's knowledge of the mission. 4. The element continues assembly-area activities and security. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained equipment and weapons. b. Conducted personal hygiene. c. Resupplied the equipment and materials, to include small-arms ammunition, demolitions, mines, and the refueling of the vehicles. d. Rehearsed battle and crew drills. e. Conducted weapon test firing (if possible). f. Ate and rested. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>g. Maintained security.</p> <p>5. The element begins movement. The element leader initiates movement before completing the plan. The subordinate leader moves the element in the absence of the element leader.</p> <p>NOTE: This task step may be omitted, occur in a different sequence, or be done concurrently with another task step.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader conducts a reconnaissance. The element leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted a map reconnaissance as a minimum. (When practical, the subordinate leaders participated in the reconnaissance.) b. Conducted a ground reconnaissance (usually as part of a larger force). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Included as many subordinate leaders as practical. (2) Identified the critical areas to the mission. (3) Moved as far forward as the time and the situation permitted. <p>* 7. The element leader completes the plan. The element leader--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the map or ground reconnaissance. b. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the available equipment, personnel, and material. c. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the intelligence gained by reconnaissance assets. <p>* 8. The element leader verbally issues the completed order, in a FRAGO or an OPORD format, to the subordinate leaders and to the attached leaders. The order contains the following information:</p> <p>NOTE: The order may be given to the entire element at the same time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. SITUATION. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Enemy forces. (2) Friendly forces. (3) Attachments and detachments. b. MISSION. c. EXECUTION. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Concept of the operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Scheme of maneuver. (b) Fires. (c) Reconnaissance and surveillance. (d) Intelligence. (e) Engineer support. (f) Air defense. (g) Information operations. (2) Subunit tasks. (3) Coordinating instructions. At a minimum the element leader must address the-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Time or condition when the plan or order becomes effective. (b) Commander's critical information requirements (CCIR). (c) Risk-reduction control measures. <p>NOTE: The element leader determined the risk-reduction control measures by using the 5 steps of the risk-management process. For additional information, the element leader referred to Field Manual (FM) 101-5.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (d) Rules of engagement. (e) Environmental considerations. (f) Force protection. d. SERVICE SUPPORT. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Support concept. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Materials and services. (3) Medical evacuation and hospitalization. (4) Personnel. (5) Civil Military. e. COMMAND and SIGNAL. (1) Command. (a) The location of the element leadership, support-element leadership, and the command posts for the operation. (b) Succession of command. (If not stated in the element's standing operating procedure [SOP] or tactical standing operating procedure [TACSOP]). (2) Signal. (a) Signal operation instructions (SOI) in effect. (b) Radio communication restrictions. (c) Visual and pyrotechnic signals. (d) Code words and reports specific to the operation. (e) Communications security (COMSEC) guidelines and procedures.</p> <p>* 9. The subordinate leaders complete the PCCs. The element leaders conduct the PCIs. NOTE: Subordinate leaders can conduct the PCCs on receipt of a WO or a FRAGO. The element should have mission-specific PCC/PCI checklists in the element TACSOP.</p> <p>a. Checked/inventoried equipment and ensured that the items were serviceable and that the elements had everything specified in the element SOP and the items required for the specific mission. b. Ensured that the element had adequate resupply ammunition, food, water, repair parts, fuel, medical supplies, obstacle material, demolitions, and mines. c. Conducted a communications check. d. Ensured that personnel, equipment, and carriers were camouflaged and that the weapons were test fired. e. Questioned personnel to ensure that they understood their task and purpose and that of the element's headquarters. f. Inspected personnel, vehicles, weapons, and equipment just before starting the mission.</p> <p>*10. The leaders of the element conduct at least one type of rehearsal according to FM 101-5.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security	ARTEP 5-025-66-MTP ARTEP 5-026-34-MTP ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP ARTEP 5-053-11-MTP ARTEP 5-063-10-MTP ARTEP 5-063-11-MTP ARTEP 5-063-35-MTP ARTEP 5-155-66-MTP ARTEP 5-156-34-MTP ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP ARTEP 5-157-35-MTP ARTEP 5-215-66-MTP ARTEP 5-216-34-MTP ARTEP 5-217-10-MTP ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP ARTEP 5-425-66-MTP ARTEP 5-426-34-MTP ARTEP 5-427-10-MTP ARTEP 5-427-35-MTP ARTEP 5-445-64-MTP ARTEP 5-445-66-MTP ARTEP 5-446-34-MTP ARTEP 5-446-36-MTP ARTEP 5-447-10-MTP ARTEP 5-447-11-MTP ARTEP 5-447-35-MTP ARTEP 5-447-37-MTP
07-3-4129.05-T01A	Defend a Battle Position	ARTEP 5-026-34-MTP ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP ARTEP 5-053-11-MTP ARTEP 5-053-12-MTP ARTEP 5-053-35-MTP ARTEP 5-063-10-MTP ARTEP 5-063-11-MTP ARTEP 5-063-35-MTP ARTEP 5-113-11-MTP ARTEP 5-113-12-MTP ARTEP 5-113-35-MTP ARTEP 5-156-34-MTP ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP ARTEP 5-157-35-MTP ARTEP 5-216-34-MTP ARTEP 5-217-10-MTP ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP ARTEP 5-335-66-MTP ARTEP 5-336-34-MTP ARTEP 5-337-10-MTP ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP ARTEP 5-413-35-MTP ARTEP 5-415-66-MTP ARTEP 5-416-34-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 5-417-13-MTP
		ARTEP 5-417-14-MTP
		ARTEP 5-417-17-MTP
		ARTEP 5-417-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-423-11-MTP
		ARTEP 5-423-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-424-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-426-34-MTP
		ARTEP 5-427-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-427-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-434-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-435-66-MTP
		ARTEP 5-435-67-MTP
		ARTEP 5-436-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-436-37-MTP
		ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-437-11-MTP
		ARTEP 5-437-36-MTP
		ARTEP 5-437-38-MTP
		ARTEP 5-443-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-446-34-MTP
		ARTEP 5-446-36-MTP
		ARTEP 5-447-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-447-11-MTP
		ARTEP 5-447-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-447-37-MTP
		ARTEP 5-500-21-MTP
		ARTEP 5-500-22-MTP
		ARTEP 5-500-24-MTP
		ARTEP 5-510-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-510-12-MTP
		ARTEP 5-510-16-MTP
		ARTEP 5-510-18-MTP
		ARTEP 5-520-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-540-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-540-11-MTP
		ARTEP 5-540-12-MTP
		ARTEP 5-540-13-MTP
07-3-4129.05-T01D	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION	ARTEP 5-335-60-MTP
		ARTEP 5-335-65-MTP
		ARTEP 5-335-70-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A)
 (FM 24-18) (FM 24-1) (FM 24-19)
 (FM 24-33)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is tactically deployed and must establish the communications network. The operators have been briefed and issued extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the standing signal instructions (SSI), the numerical cipher, the authenticated system, the operations codes, and the brevity lists. Situational hazards such as nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) conditions; opposing forces (OPFOR); electronic warfare (EW); and directional finding ability exists. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The operators establish and enter a radio net no later than the time prescribed in the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN). The net is not compromised. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The radio operators install a radio set for operation. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Secured radios in mount. b. Connected audio accessories. c. Installed antennas. d. Performed before-operation preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS). e. Performed radio operational checks. 2. The radio operators make initial entry into the nets. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained appropriate call signs, suffixes, and frequencies from the SOI and/or the SSI. b. Entered a radio net. c. Authenticated when challenged by the net control station (NCS). 3. The radio operators recognize frequency interference. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Recognized jamming or interference. b. Determined if the interference was internal or external. c. Determined if the interference was intentional or unintentional. 4. The radio operators initiate prescribed electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Continued to operate. b. Increased the transmit power. c. Tuned the receiver for max signal. d. Relocated the antenna. e. Requested a change of frequency. f. Reported suspected jamming to the immediate supervisor. g. Submitted meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder reports. 5. The radio operators employ preventive ECCM and radio procedures. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Used communications security (COMSEC) equipment (secure), if available (transmission security (TSEC)/KY-38 or TSEC/KY-57). b. Loaded the appropriate key variables using KYK-13 or KOI-15. c. Used only approved radiotelephone procedures as required by the SOI and/or the SSI. d. Encrypted and decrypted grid coordinates using the SOI and/or the SSI (not necessary in secure-voice operation). e. Kept the length (not more than 20 seconds per transmission) and the number of transmissions to a minimum. f. Used the lowest power setting required to communicate with desired stations. g. Used the correct call signs and frequencies. h. Observed periods of radio-listening silence. i. Adhered to net discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-5700.01-0002	Determine Call Signs, Frequencies, and Item Numbers	STP 21-II-MQS
01-5700.01-0003	Employ a Numeral Cipher Authentication System	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINGGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A)

(FM 24-19)
(FM 24-33)

(FM 20-3)
(FM 24-35)

(FM 24-18)
(FM 24-35-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The team has been briefed and has extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the standing signal instructions (SSI), the appropriate loading devices with keys, a radio-net diagram, maps, and grid coordinates. Subtasks 1 through 4 are done in the motor pool or staging area prior to going to the field location. General condition applies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SINGGARS radio sets are operational according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and the operation plan (OPLAN) or operation order (OPORD). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The supervisor checks all radios for completeness and operability.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the vehicular and manpack systems were assembled correctly. <p>WARNING: High voltages exist at connector J1 on the mounting adapter. Be sure J1 is covered or capped when not in use.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Ensured that the operator logged the amp hours (manpack only). c. Ensured that the preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) were completed. <p>* 2. The supervisor selects the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected the primary and the alternate locations within the general site. b. Established and maintained camouflage discipline. c. Ensured that the location provided effective use of the terrain in an electronic warfare (EW) environment. d. Ensured that the location avoided interference from power lines and other friendly sources of frequency interference. <p>3. The net members perform pre-mission checks for a SINGGARS FH cold-start net opening.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed before-operation PMCS. b. Loaded the transmission security key (TSK) using MX-10579 or MS-18290 (nonintegrated communications security [non-ICOM] only). c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (ICOM only). d. Loaded the traffic encryption key (TEK) using KYK-13. <p>4. The net control station (NCS) performs pre-mission checks for SINGGARS FH cold-start net opening.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed preoperational PMCS. b. Loaded the TSK and the hop set using MX-10579 or MX18290 (non-ICOM only). c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (ICOM only). d. Loaded the TEK using KYK-13. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Loaded the FH sync-time according to the SOI and/or the SSI. f. Loaded the cue frequency. g. Directed the alternate NCS to load the cue frequency as required. h. Changed the net identification according to the SOI and/or the SSI. <p>5. The NCS opens the net.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Issued the net call in the secure mode on the MAN channel. b. Issued the electronic counter-countermeasures [ECCM] remote fill (ERF) instructions and sent the ERF. c. Set the channel switch to the hop set channel and issued the net call. d. Opened the net. e. Reset the channel switch to MAN and called missing net members. f. Repeated the cold start. g. Set the FCTN switch to SQ ON. <p>6. The net members enter the net.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Responded in the correct sequence to the net call. b. Stored the ERF, set the channel switch to the hop set channel, reset the channel switch to MAN, and set the FCTN switch to SQ ON. c. Responded in sequence to the NCS call. d. Reset the channel switch to MAN and the FCTN switch to LO if the member missed the ERF or heard no communications on the hop set channel. e. Responded in sequence to the NCS call. <p>7. The net members perform the late net entry (LNE), cue, and ERF method.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed pre-mission checks for a FH cold-start. b. Loaded the cue frequency according to the SOI and/or the SSI. c. Initiated the cue call. d. Reported into the net. e. Switched to the MAN channel and conducted the cold-start net opening. <p>8. The net members use proper radio procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Kept the length and the number of transmissions to a minimum. b. Used the lowest power setting required to communicate. c. Used authorized call signs and frequencies. d. Observed periods of radio-listening silence. e. Operated on a random schedule. f. Adhered to net discipline. <p>9. The team members recognize different types of interference.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Checked the receiver/transmitter's (RT) signal (SIG) display when it was not transmitting. If the display was constantly or intermittently higher than 1, then the members disconnected the antenna to determine if the interference was internal or external. b. Initiated the ECCM for external symptoms. <p>10. The team members initiate ECCM actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Continued to operate. b. Did not disclose the effectiveness of the jamming in the clear. c. Reduced the transmission speed. d. Increased the transmitter power. e. Relocated the antenna. f. Prepared and forwarded a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder report to the supervisor in the United States message text format (USMTF). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>11. The team members extend the range of the radio station.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected the OE-254 for serviceability. b. Installed the OE-254 antenna using the team method. c. Accomplished the transaction from the whip antenna to the OE-254 without unnecessary interruption of service. <p>12. The retransmission team establishes a retransmission site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Installed and connected the OE-254 antennas. b. Performed preoperational PMCS. c. Loaded the CMD NET MAN frequency in radio C. d. Loaded the CMD NET MAN and cue frequencies in radio D. e. Loaded the TSK and the TEK into both radios (non-ICOM only). f. Loaded the hop set and the TEK into both radios (ICOM only). g. Cue'd the LNE using radio D. h. Stored the ERF into both radios. i. Changed radio D to RTS MAN and cue frequencies and TRS net ID. j. Set the FCTN switches of radios C and D to retransmit (RXMT). <p>13. The team members initiate the net radio interface (NRI) call.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Called the NRI operator on the NRI hop set channel, or initiated a cue call on the NCI cue channel as required. b. Switched to NRI MAN channel. c. Established communications on the NRI hop set channel. d. Identified the telephone subscriber by call sign or telephone number. <p>14. The team members maintain the SINCGARS radio net.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed PMCS, as required. b. Performed fault isolation, as required. c. Performed user-level maintenance, as required. d. Evacuated the faulty equipment, as required. e. Completed all of the necessary entries in the maintenance record. f. Reported all uncorrected deficiencies to the immediate supervisor. <p>15. The NCS closes the net.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Called the net and issued closedown instructions. b. Received acknowledgement in the correct sequence. c. Acknowledged the net members. d. Performed after-operation PMCS. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

ARTEP 5-425-66-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: CMD SECTION
 S1 SECTION
 S2 SECTION
 S3 SECTION
 S4 SECTION

TASK: Participate in the Operations Order Process (12-1-0408.05-T01A)
 (FM 101-5) (FM 100-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is engaging in combat operations and has received a mission from higher headquarters. The battalion commander has issued planning guidance. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The personnel estimate and annex of the operation order (OPORD) are completed in the time outlined in the commander's guidance. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section prepares the personnel estimate. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained the commander's restated mission. b. Obtained intelligence information from the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2). c. Obtained tactical information from the commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). d. Obtained logistical information from the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4). e. Prepared the troop-preparedness situation. f. Analyzed and compared courses of action. g. Developed conclusions. h. Presented conclusions to the commander. 2. The S1 section participates in the preparation process for the service-support annex. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verified the battalion's task organization. b. Updated task-force battle rosters and personnel strength (PS) charts to reflect the new task organization. c. Advised the commander and staff on task-force PS. d. Developed estimates of injured, sick, and wounded rates. e. Coordinated the location of medical-support facilities and evacuation routes and procedures. f. Provided medical-support information to staff members in support of staff planning. g. Relayed tactical/operational information and command directives to medical-support units. h. Verified casualty data and strength information with the battalion aid station. i. Established requirements and procedures for strength accounting, replacements, and casualty reporting. j. Coordinated and designated temporary enemy prisoner of war (EPW) and civilian-detainee collection points and outlined evacuation procedures. k. Prepared the personnel portion of paragraph 4 (Service Support) of the OPORD. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
I. Briefed task organization and personnel portions of the OPORD.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-0338.05-T01A)
 (FM 22-51) (AR 27-1) (AR 600-15)
 (AR 608-99) (FM 21-20) (FM 22-9)
 (UCMJ)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is preparing to resume combat operations. During preparations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Level 1 threat; nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Preparations occur during lulls in combat operations. Digital units have functional digital systems. The task may occur in a field or military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT) environment. The tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs) are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company follows and applies techniques to counter performance degradation and to enhance combat effectiveness. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means to maintain and inform subordinate units of the common operational picture (COP) and maintain situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The company commander executes actions to keep soldiers informed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level. b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situations. c. Told the soldiers of the leaders' intentions. d. Spoke positively concerning the unit's mission, purpose, and abilities. e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit. f. Quelled and prevented rumors. g. Disseminated command information to include the availability of religious support. * 2. The company commander or first sergeant (1SG) implements the unit's sleep plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Developed the unit's sleep plan. b. Provided safe, secure areas away from vehicles and other activities for sleep. c. Provided an opportunity for the maximum number of soldiers to sleep or rest where possible. d. Specified and provided time for leaders to sleep or rest. e. Adjusted the plan to the tactical situation. * 3. All leaders implement task-rotation restructuring procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Cross-trained soldiers on critical tasks. b. Developed plans for the rotation of soldiers between demanding and nondemanding tasks. c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy, such as mathematical computations (duplicate efforts). * 4. All leaders implement stress-coping and stress-management techniques. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Taught soldiers relaxation techniques prior to deployment. b. Ensured that the unit implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or battle fatigue among soldiers and leaders. c. Ensured that soldiers used relaxation techniques when needed. d. Facilitated the acceptance of newly arrived soldiers into the unit. e. Reintegrated returned-to-duty, stressed, or battle-fatigued soldiers into the unit. <p>* 5. The company commander or 1SG implements stress-treatment techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Developed a plan to deal with mild and more serious stress or battle-fatigue cases. b. Assigned soldiers who showed signs of stress or battle fatigue to the performance of simpler tasks. c. Ensured that soldiers were supportive in speech and behavior toward soldiers suffering from stress or battle fatigue. d. Moved stressed or battle-fatigued soldiers (who did not show improvement after resting) to unit trains, supporting units, or medical facilities. e. Referred for medical evaluation or care, those soldiers who had serious signs of stress or battle fatigue or were not recuperating. <p>* 6. The company command group provides morale, welfare, and recreation (MWR) support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Implemented sports programs as the situation allowed. b. Provided hot rations. c. Coordinated postal support. d. Coordinated combat payments. e. Coordinated clothing exchange and bath support. f. Coordinated the issue and sale of soldier comfort, morale, and welfare items. g. Coordinated legal support. h. Advised higher headquarters on the unit's MWR status. <p>* 7. All leaders maintain soldiers' fitness.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored soldiers' fitness. b. Conducted physical training (as the time and combat situation allowed). c. Implemented personal hygiene and field-sanitation procedures. d. Corrected problem areas. e. Briefed the commander on the soldiers' fitness status. <p>* 8. The company commander administers the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Evaluated evidence and determined the appropriate disposition of reported violations of the UCMJ. b. Administered nonjudicial punishment. c. Forwarded charges for trial by courts-martial. <p>* 9. The company commander disposes of disciplinary infractions and misconduct by other-than-judicial or nonjudicial proceedings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Counseled soldiers for indebtedness. b. Counseled soldiers for nonsupport of dependents. c. Initiated letters of reprimand or admonition. d. Initiated administrative separations. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: BATTALION MAINTANCE SECTION

TASK: Maintain Platoon Strength (12-3-0001.05-T01A)
(FM 12-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Casualties have occurred and replacements are arriving. A lull in the battle has occurred. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: A personnel status report (PSR), which accounts for all platoon personnel, is provided daily or as required. Digital units send requests, reports / orders via frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Squad members take immediate action. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed first aid on wounded soldiers. b. Requested medical aid, as needed. * 2. Squad leaders report the personnel status of the squad. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Accounted for all assigned or attached personnel. b. Prepared Department of the Army (DA) Form 1156 for killed or wounded soldiers (body under United States [US] control). c. Prepared DA Form 1155 for captured or missing soldiers (body not under US control). d. Forwarded reports and completed forms to the company command post (CP). * 3. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant processes strength information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Recorded the situation report (SITREP) and other personnel information. b. Directed cross-leveling to fill critical-position openings caused by casualties. c. Consolidated squad personnel reports. d. Collected casualty feeder reports and witness statements (DA Forms 1155 and 1156). e. Updated the battle roster and the platoon's strength-accountability system. f. Determined critical-replacement requirements. g. Prepared the strength report. * 4. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant processes replacements. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Briefed replacements on the mission, the tactical situation, platoon policies and procedures, specific duties, and site or platoon orientation. b. Entered the names of soldiers onto the platoon's accountability system or battle roster. c. Inspected soldiers for combat-critical clothing and equipment. d. Arranged for the issue of missing required items of combat-critical clothing and equipment. e. Implemented the buddy system. f. Arranged for the movement of soldiers to assignments. * 5. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant reports the personnel status. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Forwarded completed DA Forms 1155 and 1156. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Transmitted the strength report and other requested personnel information.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
081-831-1005	PREVENT SHOCK	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1016	PUT ON A FIELD OR PRESSURE DRESSING	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

CHAPTER 6

External Evaluation

6-1. General. Performance-oriented evaluations are conducted to evaluate the unit's ability to perform its mission. This chapter is a guide for preparing evaluations. Using units may modify this evaluation, based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander. Selected training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in Chapter 5 are used for evaluation which involves the total unit and employs realistic opposing forces (OPFOR) and the use of the Multiple Integrated Laser-Engagement System (MILES). At the end of the evaluation, the commander can identify the strengths and weaknesses of his unit. These strengths and weaknesses are the basis for future training and resource allocations.

6-2. Preparing the Evaluation. The commander must standardize evaluation procedures to measure the unit's capabilities accurately. Table 6-1 is a sample evaluation scenario that contains the missions as well as the appropriate tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Figure 6-1 is a graphic representation of the scenario. Selective tailoring is required because it is not possible to evaluate every task. The following procedures are suggested for developing the evaluation:

Table 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario

Event	Action	Estimated Time Allotted	Proposed Time Frame	
1	Conduct Preevaluation Operations	Prestart time		
2	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures			
3	Issue Battalion Road-March Order	2 hours	Day 1	0200 hours
4	Conduct Tactical Road March	5 hours		0400 hours
5	Occupy Assembly Area	3 hours		0900 hours
	<u>Module 1</u>			
6	Receive Warning Order	2 hours		1200 hours
7	Support Combat Operations (Mobility)			
8	Conduct Unit Support Operations			
9	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations			
10	Conduct Administrative Operations			
11	Conduct Intelligence Operations			
	<u>Module 2</u>			
12	Conduct Unit Support Operations		Day 2	1400 hours
13	Receive Warning Order			
14	Support Combat Operations (Counter-mobility)			
15	Perform Unit Maintenance Operation			
16	Move to After-Action Review (AAR) Site and Conduct AAR			
17	End of Exercise (ENDEX)			
			Total Time:	12 hours

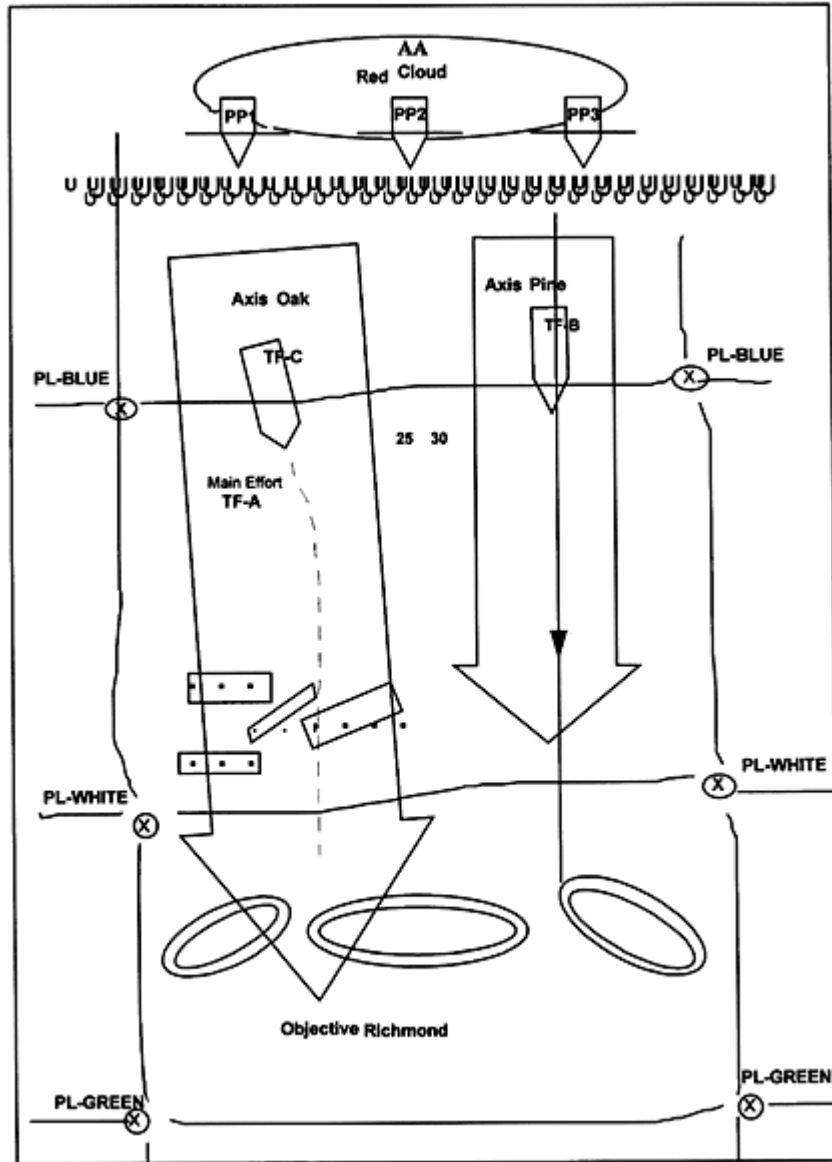


Figure 6-1. General Scenario Illustration

a. Identify the missions for evaluating each echelon or element, using Figure 2-2 in Chapter 2. Record the selected missions on the unit proficiency work sheet (UPW) (see Figure 6-2).

Unit: _____		Date: _____				Unit Overall Rating and Remarks
Number	Unit Mission/Task	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	

NOTE: If more space is required for remarks, use the back side of this form.

Figure 6-2. Sample UPW

6-3. Resource Requirements and Planning Considerations. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of the support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experience with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating headquarters (HQ) must prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

Table 6-2. Sample Consolidated Requirements

CONSOLIDATED SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS FOR FTX 5-1-E0001			
Ammunition	DODIC	Estimated Basic Load	
5.56 millimeters (mm)	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per squad automatic weapon (SAW)	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
Antitank Weapon-Effect Simulator System (ATWEES) (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolition) or 6 per squad	
Demolitions (1) (Refer to the note below.)			
Mine-clearing line charge (MICLIC)		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block trinitrotoluene (TNT)		50 per squad	
Modernized demolition initiator (MDI) M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 each platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
Other Items			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
Class IV			
Concertina wire			
Mines			
MILES Equipment	Company	Evaluators	OPFOR
Armored personnel carrier (APC)	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine-gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small-arms alignment fixture		2	
NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to their use) during the field training exercise (FTX).			

6-4. Selecting and Training Os/Cs. A successful evaluation depends heavily on selecting Os/Cs with the proper experience, training them to fulfill their responsibilities, and supervising them throughout the evaluation.

a. A six-person O/C team should be used to perform an external evaluation of the battalion. The team should be made up of the following personnel:

- (1) Senior O/C.
- (2) Staff O/C.
- (3) Operations O/C.
- (4) Administration O/C.
- (5) Logistics O/C.
- (6) Nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) O/C.

b. A thorough knowledge of the battalion's mission, organization, equipment, and doctrine is required by the Os/Cs. They must understand the overall operation of the battalion and how it is integrated into and supports force-projection operations. Team members must have a working knowledge of the common individual and collective tasks in areas such as local-defense convoy procedures, communications, and NBC. One member of the team must have detailed expertise in the NBC and local-defense, common-task areas. Os/Cs should be equal in grade to the person in charge of the element they are evaluating, and they should have previous experience in the position being evaluated. All team members must be able to make objective evaluations, function effectively as a team member, and state their findings in writing and briefings.

c. O/C training focuses on providing Os/Cs with a general understanding of the overall evaluation, providing each O/C with a detailed understanding of the specific duties and responsibilities, and building a spirit of teamwork. O/C training includes--

- (1) The overall evaluation design, general scenario, master-events list, and the specific evaluation purposes and objectives.
- (2) The battalion mission-essential task list (METL) and its linkage to the T&EOs and other materials contained in this Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) mission training plan (MTP).
- (3) The O/C team composition and the general duties and responsibilities of each team member.
- (4) The detailed responsibilities of individual team members, with special emphasis on the master-events list items that are their responsibility. This includes--
 - (a) A review of written instructions and materials contained in the Os/Cs folders.
 - (b) A detailed reconnaissance of the area used for the evaluation.
 - (c) The O/C communications and command and control (C2) systems.
 - (d) Safety procedures.
 - (e) Evaluation data-collection operation plan (OPLAN) and procedures.
 - (f) AAR procedures and techniques.

(5) A talk-through of the entire evaluation, including war-gaming all items on the master-events list in order of their occurrence, and a review of each team member's responsibilities and anticipated problems.

d. The senior O/C supervises the operation of the team. He provides the team leadership, focuses his efforts on ensuring that the Os/Cs fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan, resolves problems, synchronizes the efforts of the team members, ensures close coordination among team members, holds periodic team coordination meetings, plans and orchestrates the battalion's AAR, and conducts specific evaluation-team AARs.

6-5. Selecting and Training OPFOR. The OPFOR support for an external evaluation of the battalion is limited to two squads of dismounted infantry and two to five individuals who serve as enemy agents. Although OPFOR support is only used for some tasks, proper training and employment of this force is important to ensure a proper assessment of the battalion's capabilities.

a. The OPFOR commander should be a company grade officer or a senior noncommissioned officer (NCO) who is well trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. In addition to the duties and responsibilities in leading various OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander serves as a part-time member of the O/C team. In order to fulfill O/C responsibilities, the OPFOR commander must participate in O/C planning and training activities. He must be present during AARs.

b. OPFOR elements are trained, organized, and equipped to operate in a manner that depicts threat forces as realistically as possible. Their training includes--

- (1) Threat tactics and rules for engagement.
- (2) OPFOR missions and responsibilities.
- (3) OPFOR tasks and standards.
- (4) Threat weapons and equipment, if available.
- (5) C2.
- (6) Safety.

6-6. Conducting the Evaluation. The senior O/C has overall responsibility for conducting the evaluation. He orchestrates the overall evaluation and the support provided by the various individuals and elements which are specially selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities.

a. O/Cs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the battalion.

b. The HQ two echelons above the battalion being evaluated should select and train the control element for the evaluation. It issues orders, receives reports, provides feeder information, and controls the OPFOR.

c. All exercise participants and supporting personnel must ensure that every facet of the evaluation is conducted in a safe manner. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must take prompt action to halt them and must advise their superiors of the situation.

6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information.

a. The senior O/C is responsible for implementing the evaluation scoring system. Although the final evaluation is made up by the senior O/C, the full team participates in this process. Their reports reflect the overall ability of the combat engineer battalion to accomplish its wartime missions.

b. The evaluation scoring system is based on an evaluation of the unit's performance of each mission-essential task and any other collective task contained in the overall evaluation plan. Use the following four steps for the evaluation:

(1) Identify the ARTEP MTP T&EOs which correspond to each of the evaluation plan tasks.

(2) Use T&EO standards to evaluate the unit's performances of the tasks. This is done for each evaluation plan task.

(3) Record on the T&EO a GO for each performance measure performed to standard and a NO-GO for each performance measure not performed to standard.

(4) Record the unit's overall capability to perform the task by using GO/NO-GO information recorded on each T&EO. Use the following definitions as guidance in making this determination:

(a) GO - The unit successfully accomplished the task or performance measure to standards.

(b) NO-GO - The unit did not accomplish the task or performance measure to standard.

c. Use other locally designed reports that are approved by the senior O/C and prescribed in the evaluation plan to collect the evaluation information. These reports assist the team in recording the information concerning the unit's capability to perform its wartime mission according to the established standards. This information will assist the senior O/C to determine the unit's overall final rating. The following reports can be used to collect the information:

(1) Unit data sheet (Figure 6-4). This report records personnel and equipment status information.

(2) Environmental data sheet (Figure 6-5). This report records information concerning weather and terrain conditions present during the evaluation period.

(3) Personnel- and equipment-loss report (Figure 6-6). This report records information concerning battalion personnel and equipment losses during OPFOR engagements.

UNIT DATA SHEET						
1. Unit Designation:				Date:		
2. Unit Leaders: (Circle the most correct answer.)						
Position	Rank	Time in Unit (Months)				
Commander	LTC/MAJ	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Executive officer	MAJ/CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Bn S3	MAJ/CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Bn S2	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Bn S1	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Bn S4	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Bn maintenance officer	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
A Company CDR	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
B Company CDR	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
C Company CDR	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
3. Unit Strength (excluding leaders):						
4. Equipment Shortages (major items):						
5. Comments:						
O/C Signature:						

Figure 6-4. Sample Unit Data Sheet

ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET						
Exercise Number and Description:						
Date/Time Exercise Started:						
Date/Time Exercise Ended:						
1. Weather Conditions: (Circle the appropriate description.)						
Clear	Partly Cloudy	Cloudy	Hazy	Rain	Snow	Fog
Other:						
Temperature:						
2. Ground Conditions: (Circle the appropriate description.)						
Dry	Wet	Ice	Snow			
Other:						
3. Light Conditions: (Circle the appropriate description.)						
Day	Night					
Moon phase	1/4	1/2	3/4	Full		
Average Range of Visibility Due to Terrain:						
4. Terrain: (Circle appropriate description.)						
Flat	Rolling	Mountains	Jungle	Desert	Urban	Artic
Other:						
Top Soil:	Sandy	Rocky	Clay	Other:		
Average Range of Visibility Due to Terrain:						
5. Remarks:						

Figure 6-5. Sample Environmental Data Sheet

b. Key steps in the AAR process are--

(1) Planning. Planning for AARs is started in the exercise preparation activities long before the start of the action evaluation. AARs are integrated into the general scenario at logical breakpoints and into the detailed evaluation scenario which is developed subsequently. Qualified Os/Cs are selected and trained in the AAR process as part of O/C training. This phase also includes the identification of potential AAR sites and the requisition of equipment and supplies needed to conduct the AAR.

(2) Preparation. AAR preparation starts with the beginning of the actual evaluation. In addition to observing the HQ engineer battalion performing its critical tasks, this phase includes the review of the training objectives, orders, and doctrine. Final AAR sites selection is completed and times and attendance are established. AAR information is gathered from applicable Os/Cs and battalion personnel. The AAR is organized and rehearsed.

(3) Conduct. AARs are conducted at logical breakpoints in the exercise and at the end of the evaluation. When AAR participants have assembled, the AAR begins with the senior O/C introducing the session with a statement of the AAR's purpose, the establishment of the AAR's ground rules and procedures, and a restatement of the training and evaluation objectives. Guidelines for a successful AAR include--

(a) AARs are not critiques, but are professional discussions of training events.

(b) The senior O/C guides the discussion in a manner that ensures that the participants discuss the lessons openly.

(c) Dialogue is encouraged among Os/Cs and battalion personnel.

(d) All individuals who participated in the evaluation are present for the AAR, if possible. As a minimum, every unit or element that participates in the exercise is represented.

(e) Participants discuss not only what happened, but also how it happened and how it could have been done better.

(f) Participants review the sequence of the events associated with the hazards and the risk assessment made before the exercise. As a minimum, the review should address hazards that presented themselves (but were not identified) and each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it could be avoided in the future.

(g) Events which were not directly related to the major events are not examined.

(h) Participants do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions.

(i) The AAR's end result is that soldiers and leaders, through discovery learning, gain a better understanding of their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses and become more proficient in training for and performing their critical tasks.

NOTE: Reference materials for conducting an AAR are Training Circular (TC) 25-6, TC 25-20, and Field Manual (FM) 25-101.

APPENDIX A - EXERCISE OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)

For use of the OPORD refer to the exercise outlined in Chapter 4 and to Figure A-1.

OPERATION ORDER
<p>1. SITUATION.</p> <p>a. Enemy Forces. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear. He being reinforced with motorized rifle forces and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. Latest intelligence summaries (INTSUMs) indicate that the enemy may have a platoon-size combat outpost in the battalion sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.</p> <p>b. Friendly Forces. 1st Brigade conducts a passage of lines to seize Objective Richmond. On order, 1st Brigade continues the attack forward of phase line (PL) Green.</p> <p>(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.</p> <p>(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.</p> <p>(3) Supporting fires: 2nd Battalion, 61st Field Artillery (FA), is in direct support.</p> <p>2. MISSION. The task force (TF) conducts a passage of lines and attacks to seize and secure Objective Richmond no later than 090600Z. On order, the TF prepares to continue movement forward of PL Green.</p> <p>3. EXECUTION.</p> <p>a. Concept of the Operation: See overlay developed by the trainer in the field.</p> <p>(1) Maneuver. TF 1-25 departs assembly area (AA) Red Cloud with two company teams abreast and two teams following. Team A leads on Axis Oak and is the main attack. Team B leads on Axis Pine and is supporting the attack. Teams C and D follow on Axis Oak and Pine respectively. The commander's intent is to gain contact with the enemy and locate and fix the enemy's main body so that the brigade can conduct envelopments to destroy the enemy. It is necessary to destroy the enemies combat outposts. The unit must quickly reorganize and continue movement until the unit finds the main body. The company team that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If the unit cannot, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver with the remaining TF. The unit will continue movement to PL Green if no contact is gained. The unit will continue movement past PL Green on order.</p> <p>(2) Fire support. The priority of fires is to Team A initially and then to the team that is in contact (once contact is made).</p> <p>(3) Mines, obstacles, and fortifications. Critical choke points and identified obstacles are shown on the obstacle overlay.</p> <p>b. Subunit Missions (as required).</p> <p>c. Engineer. Priority of support is to the two lead teams. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the team in contact. Be prepared to support hasty defense on order.</p> <p>d. Coordinating Instructions.</p> <p>(1) Report all enemy contact.</p>

(2) Report all enemy obstacles.

Figure A-1. OPORD

- (3) Report crossing of the PLs.
- (4) Additional information, as required.
- 4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per brigade standing operating procedure (SOP).
- 5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
 - a. Command.
 - b. Signal.
 - (1) Current signal operating instructions (SOI).
 - (2) Radio listening silence until initial contact is made with the enemy.

Figure A-1. OPORD (continued)

APPENDIX B - CONVERSION FACTORS (UNITED STATES [US] AND METRIC)**Table B-1. Metric Conversion Chart**

US Units	Multiplied By	Equals Metric Units
Length		
Feet	0.30480	Meters
Inches	2.54000	Centimeters
Inches	0.02540	Meters
Inches	25.40010	Millimeters
Miles (statute)	1.60930	Kilometers
Miles per hour	0.0447	Meters per second
Yards	0.91400	Meters
Volume		
Cubic feet	0.02830	Cubic meters
Cubic yards	0.76460	Cubic meters
Weight		
Pounds	453.59000	Grams
Pounds	0.45359	Kilograms
Length		
Centimeters	0.39370	Inches
Meters per second	2.23700	Miles per hour
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Kilometers	0.62137	Miles (statute)
Meters	3.28080	Feet
Meters	39.37000	Inches
Meters	1.09360	Yards
Volume		
Cubic meters	35.31440	Cubic feet
Cubic meters	1.30790	Cubic yards
Weight		
Kilograms	2.20460	Pounds

GLOSSARY

Section I **Abbreviations**

CONEX	container express
O.	For Official Use Only; object above station
?	status unknown
1LT	first lieutenant
1SG	first sergeant
5 Ss and T	search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag
AA	avenue of approach; assembly area
AAR	after-action review
ABC	atomic, biological, chemical
ABCS	Army Battle Command System
ABE	assistant brigade engineer
AC	active component
ACR	armored cavalry regiment
ADA	air defense artillery
ADAM	area-denial artillery munition
ADC	area damage control
ADE	assistant division engineer
ALCE	airlift control element
AMC	air mission commander
AMS	automatic/manual switch
AMTFC	airmobile task-force commander
AO	area of operations
AOAP	Army Oil Analysis Program
APC	armored personnel carrier
AR	Army regulation; armor

ARTEP	Army Training and Evaluation Program
AT	antiterrorism; antitank
ATTN	attention
ATWESS	antitank weapon-effect signature simulator
BCOC	Base-cluster Operations Center
BDAR	battle-damage assessment and repair
BDE	brigade, backward difference in elevation
BDOC	Base-defense Operations Center
BF	board feet; battle fatigue
BLTM	battalion-level training model
BMO	battalion maintenance officer
BN	battalion
BOM	bill of materials
BOS	Battlefield Operating Systems
C&RS	calibration and repair support
C2	command and control
C2SRS	Command and Control Strength Reporting System
CALFEX	combined-arms live-fire exercise
CAS	casualty
CATS	Combined-Arms Training Strategy
CCIR	commander's critical-information requirement
CCT	combat control team
CDM	chemical downwind message
CDR	commander
CE	command element; communications-electronics
CFX	command-field exercise
CH	chaplains; combat heavy; cargo helicopter
CHS	combat health support

CL	combat lifesaver; centerline; clear
CMF	career management field
CO	commissioned officer; carbon monoxide; commanding officer; company; commander
COA	course of action
COMEX	communications exercise
COMMZ	communications zone
COMSEC	communications security
CONUS	continental United States
COP	common operational picture
CP	command post
CPR	cardiovascular pulmonary resuscitation
CPT	captain
CPX	command-post exercise
CRYPTO	cryptographic
CS	combat support; Costa Rica
CSS	combat-service support
CTA	common table of allowances; consolidated training activities
DA	Department of the Army; Denmark; direct action
DACG	departure-airfield control group
DD	Department of Defense
DEERS	Defense Enrollment Eligibility Reporting System
demo	demolition
DENTAC	dental activity
DMOS	duty military occupational specialty
DODIC	Department of Defense identification code
DRS	direct religious support; Digital Reconnaissance System
DS2	decontaminating solution #2
DTSS	Digital Topographic Support System

DZ	drop zone
DZST	drop-zone support team
EA	each; engagement area
ECB	Echelons Corps and Below
ECCM	electronic counter-countermeasures
EEFI	essential elements of friendly information
E EI	essential elements of information
EER	Enlisted Evaluation Report
EETI	essential elements of terrain information; essential elements of threat information
EGA	extended graphics adapter; electronically-generated form
EM	engineer manual; earthmoving; enlisted member
ENDEX	end of exercise
EOD	explosive ordnance disposal
EPW	enemy prisoner of war
ERF	electronic remote fill; electronic counter-countermeasures remote fill
ERP	engineer regulating point; effective radiated power; emitter receiver processor; en route reporting points; end-route rally point; enhanced radiation projectile
EW	electronic warfare
FARP	forward arming and refueling point
FBCB2	Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below
FCTN	function
FH	field hospital; frequency hopping
FIST	fire support team
FLAGS	favorable personnel actions
FM	field manual; frequency modulated/modulation
FO	forward observer
FPF	final protective fire

FPL	final protective line
FRAGO	fragmentary order
FS	fire support; Fort Sill; foresight
FSC	Finance Support Command; federal supply catalog
FSO	fire support officer
FST	field-sanitation team
FTX	field training exercise
G1	Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel)
G2	Assistant Chief of Staff, G2 (Intelligence)
G3	Assistant Chief of Staff, GS (Operations and Plans)
GEMSS	Ground-Emplaced Mine-Scattering System
GRREG	graves registration
GSR	general support-reinforcing; ground surveillance radar
HE	high explosive
HEAT	high-explosive antitank
HHC	headquarters and headquarters company
HQ	headquarters
IAW	In Accordance With
ICOM	imbedded communications; Intercommunications System
IEW	intelligence and electronic warfare
INTREP	intelligence report
INTSUM	intelligence summary
ITO	installation transportation office(r)
ITR	independent tank regiment
KIA	killed in action
LCE	load carrying equipment
LES	leave and earnings statement
LNE	late net entry

LOGSTAT	logistics statistical report; logistics status; logistical status
LOI	letter of instruction
LTC	lieutenant colonel
LZ	landing zone
MACOM	major Army command
MAJ	major
MAN	manual
MAPEX	map exercise
MARKS	Modern Army Record Keeping System
MCC	movement control center
MCM	materiel-change management; Manual for Courts-Martial
MCS	Maneuver Control System
MCSR	material-condition status report
MDI	modernized demolition initiator
MECH	mechanized
MEDDAC	medical department activity
MEDEVAC	medical evacuation
METL	mission-essential task list
METT-T	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, and time available (Army); mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, and time available (USMC)
METT-TC	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations
MHE	materials handling equipment
MICLIC	mine-clearing line charge
MIJI	meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion
MILES	Multiple Integrated Laser-Engagement System
MLC	military load classification; military load class
MM	millimeter
MO	Missouri; monthly

MOOTW	military operations other than war
MOPMS	Modular-Pack Mine System
MOPP	mission-oriented protection posture
MORTREP	mortar bombing report
MOS	military occupational specialty
MOUT	military operations on urbanized terrain
MP	military police
MQS	military qualification standards
MRE	meal, ready to eat
MSE	mobile subscriber equipment
MSR	main supply route
MSRT	mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal
MTF	medical treatment facility
MTOE	modified table(s) of organization and equipment
MTP	mission training plan; MOS training plan
MWR	morale, welfare, and recreation
NBC	nuclear, biological, chemical
NCO	noncommissioned officer
NCOIC	noncommissioned officer in charge
NCS	net control station
NET	new equipment training; net exposure time
NG	National Guard
NO.	number
non-ICOM	nonintegrated communications security
NPA	net pay advice
NRI	net radio interface
NSN	national stock number; nonstandard number

O	Peg placed distance R (see below) from RB in SS bridges or FRB in DS bridges.
O/C	observer/controller
OEG	operation exposure guide; operational-exposure guidance
OH	observation helicopter; overhang
OP	observation post
OPCON	operational control
OPFOR	opposing forces
OPLAN	operation plan
OPORD	operation order
OPSEC	operations security
OPTEMPO	operational tempo
OR	operational readiness
P	pass; passed; barometric pressure; mean radius of curvature
PAC	Personnel and Administration Center
PAM	pamphlet
PCC	precombat check
PCI	photo-coverage indexes; precombat inspection
PDDE	power-driven decontamination equipment
PDF	principal direction of fire
PIR	priority intelligence requirements
PL	phase line; Poland
PLL	Prescribed Load List
PM	provost marshal; program manager; preventive maintenance
PMCS	preventive-maintenance checks and services
PMOS	primary military occupational specialty
POE	port of embarkation
POL	petroleum, oils, and lubricants
POM	preparation for oversea movement; Program Objective Memorandum

POS/NAV	position/navigation
POV	privately owned vehicle
PRR	personnel requirements report
PS	personnel strength; personnel status
PSC	personnel service company
PSG	Platoon Sergeant
PSNCO	personnel staff noncommissioned officer
PSR	Personnel Status Report
PT	physical training; point of tangency
PVNTMED	preventive medicine
QC	quality control
RAAMS	route antiarmor mine system
RAOC	rear-area operations center
RATELO	radiotelephone operator
RATT	radio teletypewriter
RC	reserve component
RECON	reconnaissance
RES	radiation exposure status
RFL	restrictive fire line
RP	Republic of Philippines; release point; rally point
RT	radius of target.
RTD	return to duty
RXMT	retransmit
S	secret; safe; grid distance; geodetic distance; second; slope distance
S1	Adjutant (US Army)
S2	Intelligence Officer (US Army)
S3	Operations and Training Officer (US Army)
S4	Supply Officer (US Army)

SA	semiannually; situational awareness
SATRAN	satellite transmission
SATS	Standard Army Training Systems
SAW	squad automatic weapon
SB	Supply Bulletin; switchboard
SCATMINE	scatterable mine
SCI	sensitive compartmented information
SCPE	simplified collective-protection equipment
SHELREP	shelling report
SHORAD	shore-range air defense
SHTU	simplified handheld terminal unit
SIDPERS	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System
SIG	signal
SINGARS	single-channel ground and airborne radio system
SITMAP	situation map
SITREP	situation report
SJA	Staff Judge Advocate
SM	soldier's manual
SMCT	soldier's manual of common tasks
SOEO	scheme of engineer operations
SOI	signal operation instructions
SOP	standing operating procedures
SP	start point; strongpoint; self-propelled; Spain
SPOTREP	spot report
SQ	squelch
SSI	standing signal instructions
STB	super tropical bleach
STP	soldier's training publication

STRAC	standards in training commission
STRIKWARN	strike warning
STX	situational-training exercise
T	trained; slab thickness; deck thickness; crown thickness; geodetic azimuth; grid azimuth; slope distance; telescope above station
T&EO	training and evaluation outline
TA	terrain analysis; training area
TACCS	Tactical Army Combat-Service-Support (CSS) Computer System
TACSOP	tactical standing operating procedure
TAMMS	The Army Maintenance Management System
TC	technical coordinator; training circular; tank commander
TEK	traffic encryption key
TEWT	tactical exercise without troops
TF	task force
TG	trainer's guide
TM	technical manual
TMDE	test measurement and diagnostic equipment
TMO	transportation movements office(r)
TNT	trinitrotoluene
TO	theater of operations
TOC	tactical operations center
TOE	table(s) of organization and equipment
TRADOC	United States Army Training and Doctrine Command
TRP	target reference point
TRTS	tactical records traffic system
TSEC	transmission security
TSK	transmission security key
TSOP	tactical standing operating procedure

U	unclassified; up; untrained
UAV	unmanned aerial vehicle
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice
UN	United Nations
UPW	unit proficiency worksheet
US	United States
USA	United States of America; United States Army
USAREUR	United States Army, Europe
USMTF	United States message text format
UXO	unexploded explosive ordnance
VA	volt-ampere; Virginia; vertical angle
WCS	weapon-control status; weapon control station
WESTCOM	United States Army, Western Command
WIA	wounded in action
WO	warrant officer; warning order
XO	executive officer

Section II

Terms

Apparent Places of Fundamental Stars (APFS)

Contains the apparent places of 1535 stars, as well as tables for the conversion of time and other useful information.

Azimuth

The direction of one object from another, usually expressed as an angle in degrees relative to true north (azimuths are usually measured in the clockwise direction, thus an azimuth of 90° indicates that the second object is due east of the first).

Class II

Clothing, individual equipment, tentage, organizational tool sets and kits, hand tools, maps, and administrative and housekeeping supplies and equipment.

Class IV

Construction materials, including installed equipment and all fortification and obstacle materials.

Class IX

Repair parts and components, to include kits, assemblies, and subassemblies (repairable or nonrepairable), that are required for maintenance support of all equipment.

Class V

Ammunition of all types, including chemical, bombs, explosives, mines, fuzes, detonators, pyrotechnics, missiles, rockets, propellants, and other associate items.

Class VII

Major end items such as launchers, tanks, mobile machine shops, and vehicles.

Cue

(1) A word, situation, or other signal for action. An initiating cue is a signal to begin performing a task or task performance step. An internal cue is a signal to go from one element of a task to another. A terminating cue indicates task completion. (2) Used to contact an FH radio net when you are not an active member of that net. Cue can be used if you are operating in SC and wish to contact an FH net.

Defilade

A fighting position offering cover and concealment to its occupant.

EEP

engineer-equipment park

Field Manual (FM)

A DA publication that contains doctrine that prescribes how the Army and its organizations function on the battlefield in terms of missions, organizations, personnel, and equipment. The level of detail should facilitate an understanding of "what" and "how" for commanders and staffs to execute their missions and tasks. The FM may also be used to publish selected alliance doctrinal publications that are not readily integrated into other doctrinal literature.

Final protective fire (FPF)

An immediately available prearranged barrier of fire designed to impede enemy movement across defensive lines or areas.

FLIPPER

The M38 Flipper is a manual mine dispenser that is designed to emplace M74 AP and M75 AT mines (Figure 3-6). It is a simple dispensing system and uses little automation to load and dispense mines.

FRAGO (fragmentary order)

An abbreviated form of an operation order (usually issued on a day-to-day basis) that eliminates the need for restating information contained in a basic operation order.

GATOR

An air-delivered SCATMINE System. The Gator has a longer range than any other SCATMINE system. It provides a means to rapidly emplace minefields anywhere that can be reached by tactical aircraft. The Gator is produced in two versions--the United States Air Force (USAF) CBU-89/B system that contains 94 mines (72 AT and 22 AP) per dispenser and the United States Navy (USN) CBU-78/B system that contains 60 mines (45 AT and 15 AP) per dispenser.

Military occupational specialty (MOS)

A term used to identify a group of duty positions so closely related that they are interchangeable among soldiers so classified at any skill level.

Military Qualification Standards III (MQS III)

MQS III--field grade--will apply to field grade officers throughout the total Army. the goal of MQS III is to prepare field grade officers to execute Army doctrine, to serve on senior staffs, and to attend one of the

senior service colleges. Plans are presently underway to develop the MQS III program for field-grade officers.

MOPMS (modular pack mine system)

Scatterable mine system with antitank or antipersonnel mines. A mix minefield is obtained by overlapping patterns of each type.

NBC 1 Report

Observer's Initial Report used by the observing unit to give basic initial and follow-up data about an NBC attack. It is sent by platoons and companies to battalion headquarters or by designated observers to division NBC Center (NBCC).

NBC 4 Report

Monitoring and Survey Report used to report NBC hazards detected by a unit through monitoring, survey, or reconnaissance. This report is prepared and submitted by company-level organizations.

NBC 5 Report

Actual Contaminated Areas Report. Once the NBC reports are posted on the situation map, an NBC 5 report showing the contaminated area is prepared by the division. The preferred method of dissemination is by overlay.

OPORD (operation order)

A directive issued by a commander to subordinate commanders for the purpose of effecting the coordinated execution of a plan of action.

pace

A full 30-inch step as used when marching (1.3 paces = 1 meter).

Parapet

A wall, rampart, or elevation of earth or stone to protect soldiers.

Release point

A well-defined point on a route at which the elements composing a column return under the authority of their respective commanders. Each element continues its movement toward its own appropriate destination.

Situation report (SITREP)

A report giving the situation in the area of the reporting unit or formation.

SOP (standing operating procedures)

A set of instructions covering those features of operations that lend themselves to a definite or standardized procedure without loss of effectiveness. The procedure is applicable unless ordered otherwise.

Threat Level I

1. Enemy agent activity. Missions include espionage, interdiction, and subversion. 2. Sabotage by enemy sympathizers. Missions include arson, assassination, sabotage, theft of supplies and material, and political unrest. 3. Terrorism. Actions that instill fear by violence or threats of violence to obtain political, religious, or ideological goals.

UMT

unit ministry team

VOLCANO

A multiple-delivery mine system dispensed from the air or on the ground.

WADI
gully, ravine

REFERENCES

Army Regulations

- AR 15-6 Procedures for Investigating Officers and Boards of Officers. 11 May 1988.
- AR 190-47 The Army Corrections System. 15 August 1996.
- AR 190-8 Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees. 1 October 1997
- AR 220-1 Unit Status Reporting. (This item is included on EM 0001) 1 September 1997.
- AR 220-15 Journals and Journal Files. 1 December 1983.
- AR 25-11 Record Communications and the Privacy Communications System. 4 September 1990.
- AR 25-50 Preparing and Managing Correspondence. 21 November 1988.
- AR 27-1 Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Services. (This item is included on EM 0001) 3 February 1995.
- AR 27-10 Legal Services: Military Justice. 24 June 1996.
- AR 27-20 Claims. 31 December 1997.
- AR 385-10 The Army Safety Program. (This item is included on EM 0001) 23 May 1988.
- AR 385-40 Accident Reporting and Records. 1 November 1994.
- AR 530-1 Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995.
- AR 600-15 Indebtedness of Military Personnel. 14 March 1986.
- AR 600-8-1 Army Casualty Operations/Assistance/Insurance. (This item is included on EM 0001) 20 October 1994.
- AR 600-8-2 Suspension of Favorable Personnel Actions (FLAGS). (This item is included on EM 0001) 30 October 1987.
- AR 600-85 Alcohol and Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Program (Reprinted w/Basic incl C1) (This item is included on EM 0001). 3 November 1986.
- AR 608-99 Family Support, Child Custody, and Paternity. 1 November 1994.
- AR 611-75 Personnel Selection, Qualification, and Classification Management of Army Divers. 2 December 1994.
- AR 635-200 Enlisted Personnel (Reprinted w/Basic incl C1 - 14) (This item is included on EM 0001). 5 July 1984.
- AR 700-138 Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability. (This item is included on EM 0001) 16 September 1997.
- AR 710-2 Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level. 31 October 1997.
- AR 725-50 Requisitioning, Receipt, and Issue System. 15 November 1995.
- AR 750-1 Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations. (This item is included on EM 0001) 1 August 1994. 1 August 1994
- AR 750-43 Army Test, Measurement and Diagnostic Equipment Program. 28 November 1997.

Department of Army Pamphlets

- DA PAM 600-8-1 Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) Battalion S1 Level Procedures (Reprinted w/Basic incl C1 - 2) (This item is included on EM 0001). 1 August 1986. 1 August 1986

DA PAM 710-2-1

Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures)(Standalone Pub). (This item is included on EM 0001) 31 December 1997. 31 December 1997

Field Manuals

FM 100-5 Operations. 14 June 1993.

FM 101-5-1 Operational Terms and Graphics (MCRP 5-2A). 30 September 1997

FM 10-23 Basic Doctrine for Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management. 18 April 1996.

FM 10-23-1 Commander's Guide to Food Service Operations. 17 March 1992.

FM 10-27-4 Organizational Supply and Services for Unit Leaders. 14 April 2000.

FM 12-6 Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994

FM 17-95 Cavalry Operations. 24 December 1996.

FM 19-30 Physical Security. To be Published Within Six Months.

FM 19-4 Military Police Battlefield Circulation Control Area Security, and Enemy Prisoner of War Operations. 7 May 1993.

FM 19-40 Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees and Detained Persons. 27 February 1976.

FM 20-3 Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999.

FM 20-32 Mine/Countermine Operations. 28 May 1998

FM 21-10 Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000.

FM 21-10-1 Unit Field Sanitation Team. 11 October 1989.

FM 21-11 First Aid for Soldiers. 27 October 1988

FM 21-20 Physical Fitness Training. 30 September 1992.

FM 21-60 Visual Signals. 30 September 1987.

FM 21-75 Combat Skills of the Soldier. 30 August 1984

FM 22-9 Soldier Performance in Continuous Operations. 12 December 1991.

FM 24-1 Signal Support in the Air-Land Battle. 15 October 1990.

FM 24-18 Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987.

FM 24-19 Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991

FM 24-33 Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990.

FM 24-35 (O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI". 26 October 1990

FM 24-35-1 (O) Signal Supplemental Instructions. 1 October 1990

FM 25-100 Training the Force. 15 November 1988

FM 3-100 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals. 8 May 1996.

FM 3-19 NBC Reconnaissance. 19 November 1993.

FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992.

FM 3-4 NBC Protection. 29 May 1992.

FM 34-1 Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 27 September 1994.

FM 34-130 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield. 8 July 1994.

FM 34-2 Collection Management and Synchronization Planning. 8 March 1994.

FM 34-3 Intelligence Analysis. 15 March 1990.

FM 34-5 (S) Human Intelligence and Related Counterintelligence Operations. 29 July 1994.

FM 34-60 Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995.

FM 3-5 NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000.

FM 44-100 US Army Air and Missile Defense Operations. 15 June 2000.

FM 44-80 Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996.

FM 5-100	Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996.
FM 5-100-15	Corps Engineer Operations. 6 June 1995.
FM 5-102	Counter mobility. 14 March 1985
FM 5-103	Survivability. 10 June 1985.
FM 5-104	General Engineering. 12 November 1986.
FM 5-250	Explosives and Demolitions. 30 July 1998
FM 5-33	Terrain Analysis. 11 July 1990.
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999
FM 5-410	Military Soils Engineering. 23 December 1992.
FM 5-430-00-1	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Road Design. 26 August 1994.
FM 5-430-00-2	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Airfield and Heliport Design. 29 September 1994.
FM 5-480	Port Construction and Repair. 12 December 1990.
FM 55-20	Army Rail Transport Units and Operations. 1 June 2000.
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997
FM 55-65	Strategic Deployment. 3 October 1995.
FM 5-71-100	Division Engineer Combat Operations. 22 April 1993.
FM 5-71-2	Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996.
FM 5-71-3	Brigade Engineer Combat Operations (Armored). 3 October 1995.
FM 57-38	Pathfinder Operations. 9 April 1993.
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990.
FM 71-1	Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 26 January 1998
FM 71-100	Division Operations. 28 August 1996.
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985.
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992.
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques and Procedures. 14 April 00.
FM 8-230	Medical Specialist. 24 August 1984.
FM 8-285	Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries. 22 December 1995.
FM 8-55	Planning for Health Service Support. 9 September 1994.
FM 90-13	River-Crossing Operations. 26 January 1998
FM 90-7	Combined Arms Obstacle Integration. 29 September 1994
FM 9-43-2	Recovery and Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair (FMFRP 4-34; to 36-1-181). 3 October 1995.

Graphic Training Aids

GTA 5-2-14 How to Order a Map. 4 January 1984.

Other Product Types

SF 344 Multiuse Standard Requisitioning/Issue System Document. January 1972.

Soldier Training Publications

STP 10-92Y1-SM Soldier's Manual, MOS 92Y, Unit Supply Specialist, Skill Level 1. 23 February 1994.

STP 10-92Y24-SM-TG Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide for Unit Supply Specialist, MOS 92Y Skill Levels 2, 3, and 4. 23 February 1994.

STP 21-1-SMCT Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1. 1 October 1994

STP 21-24-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Levels 2-4. 1 October 1992
STP 21-I-MQS	Military Qualification Standards I Manual of Common Tasks (Precommissioning Requirements). 31 May 1990.
STP 3-54B2-SM	Soldier's Manual, Chemical Operations Specialist, MOS 54B Skill Level 2. 3 October 1995.
STP 5-12B1-SM	Soldier's Manual: MOS 12B, Combat Engineer, Skill Level 1. 14 February 2001
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	Soldier's Manual Skill Levels 2/3/4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 12B, Combat Engineer. To be published within six months.
STP 8-91B15-SM-TG	Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3/4/5 and Trainer's Guide for MOS 91B, Medical Specialist. 3 October 1995.

Technical Bulletins

TB 750-25	Maintenance of Supplies and Equipment: Army Test, Measurement and Diagnostic Equipment (TMDE) Calibration and Repair Support (C&RS) Program. 1 March 1997.
-----------	--

Technical Manuals

TM 11-3895-203-15	Operator's Organizational, Direct Support, General Support and Depot Maintenance Manual for Reel Equipment, CE-11 (NSN 5805-00-407-7722). 11 April 1967.
TM 11-5805-262-12	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Switchboards, Telephone, Manual, SB-22/PT (NSN 5805-00-257-3602) and SB-22A/PT (5805-00-715-6171) (Including Tone Signaling Adapter, TA-977/PT (5805-01-040-9653). 15 June 1990.
TM 11-5805-294-12	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Manual Telephone Switchboard, SB-993/GT (NSN 5805-00-708-2202). 8 September 1983.

Training Circulars

TC 12-16	PAC Noncommissioned Officer's Guide. 27 June 1991.
TC 12-17	Adjutant's Call/The S1 Handbook. 17 March 1992.
TC 24-20	Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988.

Army Regulations

AR 15-6	Procedures for Investigating Officers and Boards of Officers. 11 May 1988.
AR 190-47	The Army Corrections System. 15 August 1996.
AR 190-8	Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees. 1 October 1997
AR 200-1	Environmental Protection and Enhancement. (This item is included on EM 0001) 21 February 1997
AR 220-10	Preparation for Oversea Movement of Units (POM). 15 June 1973.
AR 25-50	Preparing and Managing Correspondence. 21 November 1988.
AR 27-1	Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Services. (This item is included on EM 0001) 3 February 1995.
AR 27-10	Legal Services: Military Justice. 24 June 1996.
AR 27-20	Claims. 31 December 1997.
AR 380-40	(O) Policy for Safeguarding and Controlling Communications Security (COMSEC) Material (U). 1 September 1994.

AR 380-5 Department of the Army Information Security Program. (This item is included on EM 0001) 25 February 1988.

AR 385-10 The Army Safety Program. (This item is included on EM 0001) 23 May 1988.

AR 40-5 Preventive Medicine. (This item is included on EM 0001) 15 October 1990.

AR 530-1 Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995.

AR 600-15 Indebtedness of Military Personnel. 14 March 1986.

AR 600-20 Army Command Policy (This item is included on EM 0001) 15 July 1999.

AR 600-38 Meal Card Management System. 11 March 1988.

AR 600-50 Standards of Conduct For Department of The Army Personnel. 28 January 1988.

AR 600-8 Military Personnel Management. 1 October 1989.

AR 600-8-1 Army Casualty Operations/Assistance/Insurance. (This item is included on EM 0001) 20 October 1994.

AR 600-8-14 Identification Cards for Members of the Uniformed Services, Their Family Members, and Other Eligible Personnel. 1 March 1998.

AR 600-8-2 Suspension of Favorable Personnel Actions (FLAGS). (This item is included on EM 0001) 30 October 1987.

AR 600-85 Alcohol and Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Program (Reprinted w/Basic incl C1) (This item is included on EM 0001). 3 November 1986.

AR 600-8-8 The Total Army Sponsorship Program. (This item is included on EM 0001) 1 July 1993.

AR 608-99 Family Support, Child Custody, and Paternity. 1 November 1994.

AR 635-200 Enlisted Personnel (Reprinted w/Basic incl C1 - 14) (This item is included on EM 0001). 5 July 1984.

Department of Army Forms

DA FORM 1155 Witness Statement on Individual. 1 June 1966

DA FORM 1156 Casualty Feeder Report. 1 June 1966

DA FORM 1594 Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log. 1 November 1962.

DA FORM 2266-R Army Industrial Fund Statement of Revenue and Cost. 31 December 1987.

DA FORM 2653-R Daily Shift Inventory. November 1974.

DA FORM 31 Request and Authority for Leave (EGA). 00 September 1993.

DA FORM 3955 Change of Address and Directory Card. 1 February 1979.

DA FORM 4004 Message Book M-210-B. February 1977.

DA FORM 4187 Personnel Actions. January 2000.

DA FORM 5651 Message Control Log. 29 August 1987.

DA FORM 647 Personnel Register. 1 August 1978.

Department of Army Pamphlets

DA PAM 710-2-1 Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures)(Standalone Pub). (This item is included on EM 0001) 31 December 1997. 31 December 1997

Field Manuals

FM 100-5 Operations. 14 June 1993.

FM 101-5 Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997.

FM 10-27-1 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster General Support Supply Operations. 20 April 1993.

FM 10-27-2	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster Direct Support Supply and Field Service Operations. 18 June 1991
FM 10-500-1	Airdrop Support Operations in a Theater of Operations. 19 June 1991
FM 10-67-1	Concepts and Equipment of Petroleum Operations 2 April 1998
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994
FM 19-30	Physical Security. To be Published Within Six Months.
FM 19-40	Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees and Detained Persons. 27 February 1976.
FM 20-3	Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999.
FM 20-32	Mine/Countermine Operations. 28 May 1998
FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000.
FM 21-10-1	Unit Field Sanitation Team. 11 October 1989.
FM 21-16	Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures. 30 August 1994.
FM 21-20	Physical Fitness Training. 30 September 1992.
FM 21-60	Visual Signals. 30 September 1987.
FM 21-75	Combat Skills of the Soldier. 30 August 1984
FM 22-51	Leaders' Manual for Combat Stress Control 29 September 1994
FM 22-9	Soldier Performance in Continuous Operations. 12 December 1991.
FM 24-1	Signal Support in the Air-Land Battle. 15 October 1990.
FM 24-17	Tactical Records Traffic System (TRTS). 17 September 1991.
FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987.
FM 24-19	Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991
FM 24-33	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990.
FM 24-35	(O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI". 26 October 1990
FM 24-35-1	(O) Signal Supplemental Instructions. 1 October 1990
FM 25-100	Training the Force. 15 November 1988
FM 3-100	Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals. 8 May 1996.
FM 3-11	Flame, Riot Control Agents and Herbicide Operations. 19 August 1996.
FM 3-19	NBC Reconnaissance. 19 November 1993.
FM 3-3	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992.
FM 3-34.2	Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000
FM 3-4	NBC Protection. 29 May 1992.
FM 34-54	Technical Intelligence. 30 January 1998.
FM 34-60	Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995.
FM 3-5	NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000.
FM 3-50	Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990.
FM 44-100	US Army Air and Missile Defense Operations. 15 June 2000.
FM 44-64	SHORAD Battalion and Battery Operations. 5 June 1997.
FM 44-8	Combined Arms for the Air Defense. 1 June 1999.
FM 44-80	Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996.
FM 5-10	Combat Engineer Platoon. 3 October 1995.
FM 5-100	Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996.
FM 5-100-15	Corps Engineer Operations. 6 June 1995.
FM 5-103	Survivability. 10 June 1985.
FM 5-104	General Engineering. 12 November 1986.
FM 5-170	Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998.

FM 5-250	Explosives and Demolitions. 30 July 1998
FM 5-33	Terrain Analysis. 11 July 1990.
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999
FM 5-430-00-1	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Road Design. 26 August 1994.
FM 5-430-00-2	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Airfield and Heliport Design. 29 September 1994.
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997
FM 55-65	Strategic Deployment. 3 October 1995.
FM 5-71-100	Division Engineer Combat Operations. 22 April 1993.
FM 5-71-2	Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996.
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990.
FM 71-1	Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 26 January 1998
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985.
FM 7-7J	Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 7 May 1993.
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992.
FM 8-10-1	The Medical Company Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 29 December 1994
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques and Procedures. 14 April 00.
FM 90-13	River-Crossing Operations. 26 January 1998
FM 90-7	Combined Arms Obstacle Integration. 29 September 1994
FM 9-43-1	Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 21 February 1997.
FM 9-43-2	Recovery and Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair (FMFRP 4-34; to 36-1-181). 3 October 1995.

Other Product Types

CTA 50-900	Clothing and Individual Equipment. October 1988.
DD FORM 1387-2	Special Handling Data/Certification. June 1986.
DD FORM 173/1	Joint Message Form. March 1979.
DD FORM 2745	Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag. May 1996.
DD FORM 577	Signature Card. May 1988.
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice.

Soldier Training Publications

STP 19-95B1-SM	Soldier's Manual, MOS 95B, Military Police, Skill Level 1. 21 February 1997.
STP 21-1-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1. 1 October 1994
STP 21-24-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Levels 2-4. 1 October 1992
STP 21-II-MQS	Military Qualification Standards II Manual of Common Tasks for (Lieutenants and Captains). 31 January 1991.
STP 3-54B2-SM	Soldier's Manual, Chemical Operations Specialist, MOS 54B Skill Level 2. 3 October 1995.
STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	Soldier's Manual Skill Levels 2/3/4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 12B, Combat Engineer. To be published within six months.

Technical Manuals

TM 11-3895-203-15	Operator's Organizational, Direct Support, General Support and Depot Maintenance Manual for Reel Equipment, CE-11 (NSN 5805-00-407-7722). 11 April 1967.
TM 11-5805-262-12	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Switchboards, Telephone, Manual, SB-22/PT (NSN 5805-00-257-3602) and SB-22A/PT (5805-00-715-6171) (Including Tone Signaling Adapter, TA-977/PT (5805-01-040-9653). 15 June 1990.
TM 11-5805-294-12	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Manual Telephone Switchboard, SB-993/GT (NSN 5805-00-708-2202). 8 September 1983.
TM 750-244-2	Procedures for Destruction of Electronics Materiel to Prevent Enemy Use (Electronics Command). 14 March 1972.
TM 750-244-3	Procedures for Destruction of Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (Mobility Equipment Command). 23 September 1969.
TM 750-244-6	Procedures for Destruction of Tank-Automotive Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (US Army Tank-Automotive Command). 3 October 1972.
TM 750-244-7	Procedures for Destruction of Equipment in Federal Supply Classifications 1000, 1005, 1010, 1015, 1020, 1025, 1030, 1055, 1090 and 1095 to Prevent Enemy Use. 18 June 1970.

Training Circulars

TC 12-16	PAC Noncommissioned Officer's Guide. 27 June 1991.
TC 12-17	Adjutant's Call/The S1 Handbook. 17 March 1992.
TC 24-20	Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988.

Related Publications

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

Army Regulations

AR 220-1	Unit Status Reporting. (This item is included on EM 0001) 1 September 1997.
AR 220-15	Journals and Journal Files. 1 December 1983.
AR 30-1	The Army Food Service Program. 1 January 1985.
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program. (This item is included on EM 0001) 25 February 1988.
AR 385-40	Accident Reporting and Records. 1 November 1994.
AR 530-1	Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995.
AR 700-138	Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability. (This item is included on EM 0001) 16 September 1997.
AR 710-2	Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level. 31 October 1997.
AR 750-1	Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations. (This item is included on EM 0001) 1 August 1994. 1 August 1994

Department of Army Pamphlets

DA PAM 738-750 Functional Users Manual for The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994

Field Manuals

FM 100-5 Operations. 14 June 1993.
 FM 101-5 Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997.
 FM 10-23 Basic Doctrine for Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management. 18 April 1996.
 FM 10-27-4 Organizational Supply and Services for Unit Leaders. 14 April 2000.
 FM 1-100 Army Aviation Operations. 21 February 1997.
 FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation. 7 May 1993.
 FM 21-31 Topographic Symbols. 19 June 1961.
 FM 24-18 Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987.
 FM 24-19 Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991
 FM 24-35 (O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI". 26 October 1990
 FM 24-35-1 (O) Signal Supplemental Instructions. 1 October 1990
 FM 34-1 Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 27 September 1994.
 FM 34-3 Intelligence Analysis. 15 March 1990.
 FM 34-60 Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995.
 FM 34-80 Brigade and Battalion Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 15 April 1986.
 FM 5-100 Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996.
 FM 5-102 Countermobility. 14 March 1985
 FM 5-103 Survivability. 10 June 1985.
 FM 5-104 General Engineering. 12 November 1986.
 FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999
 FM 8-10 Health Service Support in a Theater of Operations. 1 March 1991.
 FM 90-4 Air Assault Operators. 16 March 1987.

Soldier Training Publications

STP 21-24-SMCT Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Levels 2-4. 1 October 1992
 STP 21-II-MQS Military Qualification Standards II Manual of Common Tasks for (Lieutenants and Captains). 31 January 1991.

Training Circulars

TC 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988.

Army Regulations

AR 380-5 Department of the Army Information Security Program. (This item is included on EM 0001) 25 February 1988.

Department of Army Forms

DA FORM 1971-1-R Radiological Data Sheet-Route or Course Leg Technique (Ground and Aerial Survey) (LRA). September 1994.
 DA FORM 1971-R Radiological Data Sheet-Monitoring and Point Technique (LRA). September 1994.

Field Manuals

FM 101-5

Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997.

FM 3-50-1

Smoke Unit Operations (FM to be Published in the Future). 6 September 1982.

Other Product Types

STP 5-21II-MQS

Military Qualification Standards II Engineer (21) Company Grade Officer's Manual. 22 March 1991.

Soldier Training Publications

STP 5-62G13-SM-TG

Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide: 62G Quarrying Specialist (Skill Levels 1/2/3). 5 May 1986

Questionnaire

MISSION TRAINING PLAN (MTP) NUMBER _____ DATE _____

MTP TITLE _____

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please respond to all questions by circling your answer or providing a written response, where requested. Please make a copy of this questionnaire. Mail to: Commandant, Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-6600.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU.

1. What is your position (for example, company commander, platoon sergeant [PSG])?

2. How long have you served in this position? _____

3. How long have you served in this unit? _____

4. What is your component?

- a. Active Component
- b. Reserve Component

5. Where is your unit?

- a. Continental United States (CONUS)
- b. United States Army, Europe (USAREUR)
- c. United States Army, Western Command (WESTCOM)
- d. Eighth United States Army (USA)
- e. Other (specify)

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT THE MTP IN GENERAL.

6. How do you feel this document has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?

- a. Has made training worse.
- b. Has made training better.
- c. Has had no affect on training.
- d. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

7. How easy is the document to use, compared to other training products?

- a. More difficult.
- b. Easier.
- c. About the same.
- d. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

For question numbers 8 through 11, choose one of the following answers:

- a. Chapter 1, Unit Training.
- b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes.
- c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines.
- d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises.
- e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines.
- f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation.
- g. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

8. What part of the MTP document was least useful? _____

9. What part of the MTP document was most useful? _____

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand?

11. What is the easiest part of the MTP to understand? _____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES AND SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISES (STXs).

12. The exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose?

- a. They do not prepare the unit at all.
- b. They help, but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit's training requirements.
- c. They help, but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit's training requirements.
- d. They help, but only provide between 51 to 80 percent of my unit's training requirements.
- e. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit's training requirements.

13. Would you recommend that any STX be added or deleted from the MTP? _____

14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

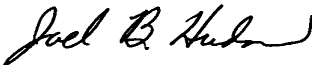
- a. Have too many pages.
- b. Are hard to read and understand.
- c. Need more illustrations.
- d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises.
- e. Need more information on leader training.
- f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises.
- g. Need more information on support and resources.
- h. Need more information on normally attached elements.
- i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills.
- j. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

**ARTEP 5-425-66-MTP
02 OCTOBER 2000**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

ERIC K. SHINSEKI
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:



JOEL B. HUDSON
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
0111302

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve: Not to be distributed. EMO only.

PIN: 079011-000